

**FOR PUBLICATION**

**UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS  
FOR THE NINTH CIRCUIT**

CTIA - THE WIRELESS  
ASSOCIATION,  
*Plaintiff-Appellant,*

v.

CITY OF BERKELEY, California;  
CHRISTINE DANIEL, City  
Manager of Berkeley,  
California, in her official  
capacity,  
*Defendants-Appellees.*

No. 16-15141

D.C. No.  
3:15-cv-02529-EMC

OPINION

Appeal from the United States District Court  
for the Northern District of California  
Edward M. Chen, District Judge, Presiding

Argued and Submitted September 13, 2016  
San Francisco, California

Filed April 21, 2017

Before: William A. Fletcher, Morgan B. Christen,  
and Michelle T. Friedland, Circuit Judges.

Opinion by Judge W. Fletcher;  
Dissent by Judge Friedland

**SUMMARY\***

---

**First Amendment/Preemption**

The panel affirmed the district court's order denying a request for a preliminary injunction seeking to stay enforcement of a City of Berkeley ordinance requiring cell phone retailers to inform prospective cell phone purchasers that carrying a cell phone in certain ways may cause them to exceed Federal Communications Commission guidelines for exposure to radio-frequency radiation.

Applying *Zauderer v. Office of Disciplinary Counsel of the Supreme Court of Ohio*, 471 U.S. 626 (1985), the panel held that the City's compelled disclosure of commercial speech complied with the First Amendment because the information in the disclosure was reasonably related to a substantial governmental interest and was purely factual. Accordingly, the panel concluded that plaintiff had little likelihood of success on its First Amendment claim that the disclosure compelled by the Berkeley ordinance was unconstitutional.

The panel determined that there was little likelihood of success on plaintiff's contention that the Berkeley ordinance was preempted. The panel held that Berkeley's compelled disclosure did no more than alert consumers to the safety disclosures that the Federal Communication Commission requires, and to direct consumers to federally compelled instructions in their user manuals providing specific

---

\* This summary constitutes no part of the opinion of the court. It has been prepared by court staff for the convenience of the reader.

information about how to avoid excessive exposure. The panel held that far from conflicting with federal law and policy, the Berkeley ordinance complements and reinforces it.

In affirming the denial of a preliminary injunction, the panel further determined that there was no irreparable harm based on the First Amendment or preemption, that the balance of equities tipped in Berkeley's favor, that the ordinance was in the public interest, and that an injunction would harm that interest.

Dissenting in part, Judge Friedland stated that Berkeley's ordinance likely violates the First Amendment and therefore should have been preliminarily enjoined. She stated that taken as a whole, the most natural reading of the Berkeley disclosure warns that carrying a cell phone in one's pocket is unsafe. Yet Berkeley had not attempted to argue, let alone to prove, that message was true.

---

### COUNSEL

Theodore B. Olson (argued), Helgi C. Walker, Michael R. Huston, and Jacob T. Spencer, Gibson Dunn & Crutcher LLP, Washington, D.C.; Joshua S. Lipshutz and Joshua D. Dick, Gibson Dunn & Crutcher LLP, San Francisco, California; for Plaintiff-Appellant.

Lester Lawrence Lessig, III (argued), Cambridge, Massachusetts; Amana Shanor, New Haven, Connecticut; Savith Iyengar, Deputy City Attorney; Zach Cowan, City Attorney; Berkeley City Attorney's Office, Berkeley, California; for Defendants-Appellants.

Robert Corn-Revere and Ronald G. London, Davis Wright Tremaine LLP, Washington, D.C., for Amicus Curiae The Association of National Advertisers, Inc.

Selena Kyle, Chicago, Illinois; Aaron Colangelo, Washington, D.C.; as and for Amicus Curiae Natural Resources Defense Council.

R. Matthew Wise, Deputy Attorney General; Mark R. Beckington, Supervising Deputy Attorney General; Douglas J. Woods, Senior Assistant Attorney General; Kathleen A. Kenealy, Chief Assistant Attorney General; Sacramento, California; as and for Amicus Curiae Attorney General of California.

---

### OPINION

W. FLETCHER, Circuit Judge:

A City of Berkeley ordinance requires cell phone retailers to inform prospective cell phone purchasers that carrying a cell phone in certain ways may cause them to exceed Federal Communications Commission guidelines for exposure to radio-frequency radiation. CTIA, a trade association formerly known as Cellular Telephone Industries Association, challenges the ordinance on two grounds. First, it argues that the ordinance violates the First Amendment. Second, it argues that the ordinance is preempted.

CTIA requested a preliminary injunction staying enforcement of the ordinance. The district court denied CTIA's request, and CTIA filed an interlocutory appeal. We affirm and remand for further proceedings.

---

### I. Factual and Procedural Background

In May 2015, the City of Berkeley passed an ordinance requiring cell phone retailers to disclose information to prospective cell phone purchasers about the federal government's radio-frequency radiation exposure guidelines relevant to cell phone use. Under "Findings and Purpose," the ordinance provided:

A. Requirements for the testing of cell phones were established by the federal government in 1996.

B. These requirements established "Specific Absorption Rates" (SAR) for cell phones.

C. The protocols for testing the SAR for cell phones carried on a person's body assumed that they would be carried a small distance away from the body, e.g., in a holster or belt clip, which was the common practice at that time. Testing of cell phones under these protocols has generally been conducted based on an assumed separation of 10–15 millimeters.

D. To protect the safety of their consumers, manufacturers recommend that their cell phones be carried away from the body, or be used in conjunction with hands-free devices.

E. Consumers are not generally aware of these safety recommendations.

F. Currently, it is much more common for cell phones to be carried in pockets or other locations rather than holsters or belt clips, resulting in much smaller separation distances than the safety recommendations specify.

G. Some consumers may change their behavior to better protect themselves and their children if they were aware of these safety recommendations.

H. While the disclosures and warnings that accompany cell phones generally advise consumers not to wear them against their bodies, e.g., in pockets, waistbands, etc., these disclosures and warnings are often buried in fine print, are not written in easily understood language, or are accessible only by looking for the information on the device itself.

I. The purpose of this Chapter is to assure that consumers have the information they need to make their own choices about the extent and nature of their exposure to radio-frequency radiation.

Berkeley Mun. Code § 9.96.010 (2015).

CTIA challenged the compelled disclosure provision of the ordinance, arguing that it violated the First Amendment and was preempted. One sentence of the compelled disclosure stated, “The potential risk is greater for children.” The district court held that this sentence was preempted, and it issued a preliminary injunction against enforcement of the

ordinance. In December 2015, Berkeley re-passed the ordinance without the offending sentence. In its current form, the compelled disclosure provision provides:

A. A Cell phone retailer shall provide to each customer who buys or leases a Cell phone a notice containing the following language:

The City of Berkeley requires that you be provided the following notice:

To assure safety, the Federal Government requires that cell phones meet radio-frequency (RF) exposure guidelines. If you carry or use your phone in a pants or shirt pocket or tucked into a bra when the phone is ON and connected to a wireless network, you may exceed the federal guidelines for exposure to RF radiation. Refer to the instructions in your phone or user manual for information about how to use your phone safely.

Berkeley Mun. Code § 9.96.030(A) (2015).

The ordinance requires that the compelled disclosure be provided either on a prominently displayed poster no less than 8½ by 11 inches with no smaller than 28-point font, or on a handout no less than 5 by 8 inches with no smaller than 18-point font. The logo of the City of Berkeley must be placed on the poster and handout. The ordinance provides that a cell phone retailer may include additional information on the poster or handout if it is clear that the additional

information is not part of the compelled disclosure. § 9.96.030(B) (“The paper on which the notice is printed may contain other information in the discretion of the Cell phone retailer, as long as that information is distinct from the notice language required by subdivision (A) of this Section.”).

CTIA challenged the current ordinance, arguing, as it had before, that the ordinance violates the First Amendment and is preempted. The district court noted that the preempted sentence had been removed from the ordinance, dissolved its previously entered injunction, and denied CTIA’s request for a new preliminary injunction. CTIA filed an interlocutory appeal.

## II. Jurisdiction and Standard of Review

We have jurisdiction under 28 U.S.C. § 1292. We review a denial of a preliminary injunction for abuse of discretion. *Inst. of Cetacean Research v. Sea Shepherd Conservation Soc’y*, 725 F.3d 940, 944 (9th Cir. 2013). “An abuse of discretion occurs when the district court based its ruling on an erroneous view of the law or on a clearly erroneous assessment of the evidence.” *Friends of the Wild Swan v. Weber*, 767 F.3d 936, 942 (9th Cir. 2014) (citation and internal quotation marks omitted). We will not reverse the district court where it “got the law right,” even if we “would have arrived at a different result,” so long as the district court did not clearly err in its factual determinations. *Lands Council v. McNair*, 537 F.3d 981, 987 (9th Cir. 2008) (en banc).



---

### III. Regulatory Background

The Federal Communications Commission (“FCC”) has regulatory jurisdiction over transmitting services in the United States. In 1996, after extensive consultation with other agencies, the FCC issued a rule designed to limit the Specific Absorption Rate (“SAR”) of radio-frequency (“RF”) radiation from FCC-regulated transmitters, including cell phones:

1. By this action, we are amending our rules to adopt new guidelines and methods for evaluating the environmental effects of *radio-frequency (RF) radiation* from FCC-regulated transmitters. We are adopting Maximum Permissible Exposure (MPE) limits for electric and magnetic field strength and power density for transmitters operating at frequencies from 300 kHz to 100 GHz . . . *We are also adopting limits for localized (“partial body”) absorption that will apply to certain portable transmitting devices . . . We believe that the guidelines we are adopting will protect the public and workers from exposure to potentially harmful RF fields.*

2. In reaching our decision on the adoption of new RF exposure guidelines we have carefully considered the large number of comments submitted in this proceeding, and particularly those submitted by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and other federal health and safety agencies. The

new guidelines we are adopting are based substantially on the recommendations of those agencies, and *we believe that these guidelines represent a consensus view of the federal agencies responsible for matters relating to the public safety and health.*

In re Guidelines for Evaluating the Environmental Effects of Radio-frequency Radiation, 61 Fed. Reg. 41006, 41006–07 (Aug. 7, 1996) (emphases added).

Out of concern for the safety of cell phone users, the FCC rejected an industry proposal to exclude “low-power devices” such as cell phones from the rule adopting SAR limits:

Most commenting parties, including Federal health and safety agencies, support the use of the ANSI/IEEE [American National Standards Institute/ Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers] SAR limits for localized (partial body) exposure for evaluating low-power devices designed to be used in the immediate vicinity of the body. . . . *Therefore, in view of the consensus and the scientific support in the record, we are adopting the SAR limits for the determination of safe exposure from low-power devices designed to be used in the immediate vicinity of the body based upon the 1992 ANSI/IEEE guidelines. . . .*

The SAR limits we are adopting will generally apply to portable devices . . . that are designed to be used with any part of the radiating structure of the device in direct

---

contact with the body of the user or within 20 cm of the body under normal conditions of use. *For example, this definition would apply to hand-held cellular telephones. . . .*

In re Guidelines for Evaluating the Environmental Effects of Radio-frequency Radiation (“FCC Guidelines for Radio-frequency Radiation”), FCC 96-326, ¶¶ 62–63 (Aug. 1, 1996) (emphases added).

The FCC has a better-safe-than-sorry policy with respect to SAR limits:

. . . The intent of our exposure limits is to provide a cap that both protects the public based on scientific consensus and allows for efficient and practical implementation of wireless services. The present Commission exposure limit is a “bright-line rule.” That is, so long as exposure levels are below a specified limit value, there is no requirement to further reduce exposure. . . . Our current RF exposure guidelines are an example of such regulation, including a significant “safety” factor, whereby the exposure limits are set at a level on the order of 50 times below the level at which adverse biological effects have been observed in laboratory animals as a result of tissue heating resulting from RF exposure.

In re Reassessment of FCC Radiofrequency Exposure Limits and Policies, 28 FCC Rcd. 3498, 3582 (Mar. 29, 2013). The FCC recognizes that its required margin of safety is large:

. . . [E]xceeding the SAR limit does not necessarily imply unsafe operation, nor do lower SAR quantities imply “safer” operation. *The limits were set with a large safety factor,* to be well below a threshold for unacceptable rises in tissue temperature. As a result, exposure well above the specified SAR limit should not create an unsafe condition. . . . In sum, using a device against the body without a spacer will generally result in actual SAR below the maximum SAR tested; moreover, a use that possibly results in non-compliance with the SAR limit should not be viewed with significantly greater concern than compliant use.

*Id.* at 3588 (emphasis added).

There are two ways to ensure compliance with SAR limits—reducing the amount of RF radiation from a transmitting device, and increasing the distance between the device and the user. Different low-power devices emit different amounts of RF radiation, with the result that the minimum distance between the device and the user to achieve compliance with SAR limits varies somewhat from device to device. The FCC requires that cell phone user manuals contain information that alerts users to the minimum distances appropriate for the device they are using:

*Specific information must be included in the operating manuals to enable users to select body-worn accessories that meet the minimum test separation distance requirements. Users must be fully informed*

of the operating requirements and restrictions, to the extent that the typical user can easily understand the information, to acquire the required body-worn accessories to maintain compliance. Instructions on how to place and orient a device in body-worn accessories, in accordance with the test results, should also be included in the user instructions. *All supported body-worn accessory operating configurations must be clearly disclosed to users, through conspicuous instructions in the user guide and user manual, to ensure unsupported operations are avoided.*

In re Exposure Procedures and Equipment Authorization Policies for Mobile and Portable Devices, FCC Office of Engineering and Technology Laboratory Division § 4.2.2(d) (Oct. 23, 2015) (“FCC Exposure Procedures”) (emphasis added). Compliance with this disclosure requirement is a prerequisite for approval of a transmitting device by the FCC. *See id.* at § 1.

The following are examples of cell phone user manuals that comply with the FCC’s disclosure requirement:

Apple:

iPhone’s SAR measurement may exceed the FCC exposure guidelines for body-worn operation if positioned less than 15 mm (5/8 inch) from the body (e.g. when carrying iPhone in your pocket).

*See* iPhone 3G manual, at 7, [http://manuals.info.apple.com/MANUALS/0/MA618/en\\_US/iPhone\\_3G\\_Important\\_Product\\_Information\\_Guide.pdf](http://manuals.info.apple.com/MANUALS/0/MA618/en_US/iPhone_3G_Important_Product_Information_Guide.pdf)

Samsung:

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio-frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

*See* Samsung Common Phone Health and Safety and Warranty Guide, at 8, [http://www.samsung.com/us/Legal/PHONE-HS\\_GUIDE\\_English.pdf](http://www.samsung.com/us/Legal/PHONE-HS_GUIDE_English.pdf).

LG:

The highest SAR value for this model phone when tested for use at the ear is 1.08 W/Kg (1g) and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.95 W/Kg (1g) (body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements). While there may be

differences between SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the government requirement for safe exposure. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> after searching on FCC ID ZNFL15G.

See LG Sunrise User Guide, at 93, <http://www.lg.com/us/support/manuals-documents>

#### IV. Discussion

“A plaintiff seeking a preliminary injunction must establish [1] that he is likely to succeed on the merits, [2] that he is likely to suffer irreparable harm in the absence of preliminary relief, [3] that the balance of equities tips in his favor, and [4] that an injunction is in the public interest.” *Winter v. Nat. Res. Def. Council, Inc.*, 555 U.S. 7, 20 (2008). “[A] stronger showing of one element may offset a weaker showing of another.” *Alliance for the Wild Rockies v. Cottrell*, 632 F.3d 1127, 1131 (9th Cir. 2011). For example, “a preliminary injunction could issue where the likelihood of success is such that ‘serious questions going to the merits were raised and the balance of hardships tips sharply in [plaintiff’s] favor.’” *Id.* at 1132 (quoting *Clear Channel Outdoor, Inc. v. City of Los Angeles*, 340 F.3d 810, 813 (9th Cir. 2003)).

## A. Likelihood of Success

CTIA makes two merits-based arguments against the Berkeley ordinance. First, it argues that the ordinance violates the First Amendment. Second, it argues that the ordinance is preempted. We take the arguments in turn.

## 1. First Amendment

The underlying disclosure at issue is the disclosure that the FCC compels cell phone manufacturers to provide to consumers. However, CTIA has not sued the FCC. Rather, CTIA has sued Berkeley, challenging the disclosure Berkeley compels cell phone retailers to provide to the same consumers. The Berkeley ordinance requires cell phone retailers to disclose, in summary form, the same information to consumers that the FCC already requires cell phone manufacturers to disclose. The Berkeley disclosure then directs consumers to user manuals for more specific information.

a. *Central Hudson* or *Zauderer*

The parties agree that Berkeley's ordinance is a regulation of commercial speech. *Central Hudson Gas & Elec. Corp. v. Pub. Serv. Comm'n of N.Y.*, 447 U.S. 557, 561 (1980); see *Hunt v. City of L.A.*, 638 F.3d 703, 715 (9th Cir. 2011). However, they disagree about whether the ordinance's compliance with the First Amendment should be analyzed under *Central Hudson* or under *Zauderer v. Office of Disciplinary Counsel of the Supreme Court of Ohio*, 471 U.S. 626 (1985).



---

Under *Central Hudson*, the government may restrict or prohibit commercial speech that is neither misleading nor connected to unlawful activity, as long as the governmental interest in regulating the speech is substantial. 477 U.S. at 564. The restriction or prohibition must “directly advance the governmental interest asserted,” and must not be “more extensive than is necessary to serve that interest.” *Id.* at 566. Under *Zauderer* as we interpret it today, the government may compel truthful disclosure in commercial speech as long as the compelled disclosure is “reasonably related” to a substantial governmental interest. *Zauderer*, 471 U.S. at 651; *see discussion infra*.

We apply the intermediate scrutiny test mandated by *Central Hudson* in commercial speech cases where speech is restricted or prohibited, on the ground that in such cases intermediate scrutiny appropriately protects the interests of both the speaker (the seller) and the audience (the purchaser). But one size does not fit all in commercial speech cases. In *Central Hudson* itself, the Supreme Court cautioned, “The protection available for particular commercial expression turns on the nature both of the expression and of the governmental interests served by its regulation.” *Central Hudson*, 477 U.S. at 563.

Five years after *Central Hudson*, the Court held that *Central Hudson*’s intermediate scrutiny test does not apply to compelled, as distinct from restricted or prohibited, commercial speech. In *Zauderer*, defendant Zauderer advertised legal services to prospective Dalkon Shield plaintiffs in a number of Ohio newspapers. The advertisement stated, *inter alia*, ““The cases are handled on a contingent fee basis of the amount recovered. If there is no recovery, no legal fees are owed by our clients.”” *Zauderer*,

471 U.S. at 631. Zauderer was disciplined under Ohio state bar disciplinary rules on the ground that the advertisement was “deceptive” within the meaning of the rules, *id.* at 633, because it failed to disclose “the client’s potential liability for costs even if her suit were unsuccessful.” *Id.* at 635. The Court noted that the bar disciplinary rules required Zauderer to “include in his advertising purely factual and uncontroversial information about the terms under which his services will be available.” *Id.* at 651. The Court wrote, “Ohio has not attempted to prevent attorneys from conveying information to the public; it has only required them to provide somewhat more information than they might otherwise be inclined to present.” *Id.* at 650. The Supreme Court declined to apply the *Central Hudson* test:

Because the extension of First Amendment protection to commercial speech is justified principally by the value to consumers of the information such speech provides, appellant’s constitutionally protected interest in *not* providing any particular factual information is minimal. . . . We recognize that unjustified or unduly burdensome disclosure requirements might offend the First Amendment by chilling protected commercial speech. But we hold that an advertiser’s rights are adequately protected as long as disclosure requirements are reasonably related to the State’s interest in preventing deception of consumers.

*Id.* at 651 (internal citation omitted). *See also Milavetz, Gallop & Milavetz, P.A. v. United States*, 559 U.S. 229, 253

---

(2010) (following *Zauderer* and using its “preventing deception” language).

b. The *Zauderer* Test

i. Substantial Governmental Interest

CTIA contends that the *Zauderer* exception to the general rule of *Central Hudson* does not apply in this case because the speech compelled by the Berkeley ordinance does not prevent deception of consumers. This is the first time we have had occasion in this circuit to squarely address the question whether, in the absence of a prevention-of-deception rationale, the *Zauderer* compelled-disclosure test applies. *Cf. Video Software Dealers Ass’n v. Schwarzenegger*, 556 F.3d 950, 967 (9th Cir. 2009) (invalidating compelled disclosure on video game packaging, noting that the disclosure would “arguably now convey a false statement that certain conduct is illegal when it is not, and the State has no legitimate reason to force retailers to affix false information on their products”). Several of our sister circuits, however, have answered this question. They have unanimously concluded that the *Zauderer* exception for compelled speech applies even in circumstances where the disclosure does not protect against deceptive speech.

In *American Meat Institute v. U.S. Department of Agriculture*, 760 F.3d 18 (D.C. Cir. 2014) (en banc), a Department of Agriculture regulation required identification of the country of origin on the packaging of meat and meat products. *Id.* at 20. The regulation implemented a federal statute requiring country-of-origin labeling. *See* 7 U.S.C. § 1638, 1638a. The D.C. Circuit held that *Zauderer* should not be read to apply only to cases where government-

compelled speech prevents or corrects deceptive speech. It noted that on the facts of both *Zauderer* and *Milavetz* (in which the Court repeated *Zauderer*'s "preventing deception" language) there had been deceptive speech: "Given the subject of both cases, it was natural for the Court to express the rule in such terms. The language could have been simply descriptive of the circumstances to which the Court applied its new rule[.]" *Am. Meat*, 760 F.3d at 22. The D.C. Circuit concluded, "The language with which *Zauderer* justified its approach . . . sweeps far more broadly than the interest in remedying deception." *Id.*

In *National Electrical Manufacturers Association v. Sorrell*, 272 F.3d 104 (2d Cir. 2001), a Vermont statute required manufacturers of mercury-containing products to label their products and packaging to inform consumers that the products contained mercury and instructing them that the products should be disposed of or recycled as hazardous waste. *Id.* at 107. The Second Circuit held that the compelled disclosure was supported by a "substantial state interest in protecting human health and the environment." *Id.* at 115 n. 6. Citing *Zauderer*, the court recognized that the compelled disclosure did not "prevent 'consumer confusion or deception.'" *Sorrell*, 272. F.3d at 115. It nonetheless upheld the disclosure as not "inconsistent with the policies underlying First Amendment protection of commercial speech." *Id.* "[M]andated disclosure of accurate, factual, commercial information does not offend the core First Amendment values of promoting efficient exchange of information or protecting individual liberty interests." *Id.* at 114; *see also N.Y. St. Rest. Ass'n v. N.Y. City Bd. of Health*, 556 F.3d 114, 133 (2d Cir. 2009) ("*Zauderer*'s holding was broad enough to encompass nonmisleading disclosure requirements."); *Discount Tobacco City & Lottery, Inc. v.*

---

*United States*, 674 F.3d 509, 556–58 (6th Cir. 2012) (upholding federally required health warnings on cigarette packaging and in cigarette advertisements, relying on the Second Circuit’s opinion in *Sorrell*); *Pharm. Care Mgmt. Ass’n v. Rowe*, 429 F.3d 294, 310 n.8 (1st Cir. 2005) (noting that the court had found no cases limiting application of the *Zauderer* compelled speech test to prevention or correction of deceptive advertising); *cf. Dwyer v. Cappell*, 762 F.3d 275, 281–82 (3d Cir. 2014) (describing but not relying on *Zauderer*’s preventing-deception criterion).

We agree with our sister circuits that under *Zauderer* the prevention of consumer deception is not the only governmental interest that may permissibly be furthered by compelled commercial speech. We conclude that any governmental interest will suffice so long as it is substantial. In *American Meat*, the D.C. Circuit declined to decide whether the governmental interest must be substantial, leaving open the question whether a less-than-substantial interest might suffice. *See Am. Meat*, 760 F.3d at 23 (“Because the interest motivating the 2013 [country-of-origin] rule is a substantial one, we need not decide whether a lesser interest could suffice under *Zauderer*.”). We answer the question avoided in *American Meat*, holding that *Zauderer* requires that the compelled disclosure further some substantial—that is, more than trivial—governmental interest. *Central Hudson* explicitly requires that a substantial interest be furthered by a challenged regulation prohibiting or restricting commercial speech, and we see nothing in *Zauderer* that would allow a lesser interest to justify compelled commercial speech. To use the words of the Second Circuit in *Sorrell*, the interest at stake must be more than the satisfaction of mere “consumer curiosity.” *Sorrell*, 272 F.3d at 115 n.6; *see also Am. Meat*, 760 F.3d at 23

(“Country-of-origin information has an historical pedigree that lifts it well beyond ‘idle curiosity.’”).

ii. Purely Factual Information

The Court in *Zauderer* noted that the compelled disclosure in that case was of “purely factual and uncontroversial information.” *Zauderer*, 471 U.S. at 651. The Court did not, however, require in its constitutional test that the disclosed information be “purely factual and uncontroversial.” Some lower courts have recited, without discussion, the “purely factual and uncontroversial” language as part of the *Zauderer* test. *See, e.g., Nat’l Ass’n of Mfrs. v. S.E.C.*, 800 F.3d 518, 541 (D.C. Cir. 2015) (“But whatever may be the complexities of applying the standard in discrete situations, as a matter of precedent, an obligation in the commercial sphere to disclose ‘purely factual and uncontroversial’ information about a product draws deferential First Amendment review.”); *Safelite Grp., Inc. v. Jepsen*, 764 F.3d 258, 263 (2d Cir. 2014) (“On a cursory review, our precedent arguably supports the district court’s conclusion that this law simply requires disclosure of accurate, factual information.”); *Cent. Illinois Light Co. v. Citizens Util. Bd.*, 827 F.2d 1169, 1173 (7th Cir. 1987) (“In *Zauderer*, the Court held that Ohio could constitutionally require an attorney to include in a commercial advertisement, purely factual and uncontroversial information about the terms under which the attorney’s services are available.”).

Given that the purpose of the compelled disclosure is to provide accurate factual information to the consumer, we agree that any compelled disclosure must be “purely factual.” However, “uncontroversial” in this context refers to the factual accuracy of the compelled disclosure, not to its

---

subjective impact on the audience. This is clear from *Zauderer* itself. The State of Ohio required attorneys to disclose “the client’s potential liability for costs even if her suit were unsuccessful.” *Zauderer*, 471 U.S. at 635. Ohio law permitted attorneys to charge clients for costs even after advertising and agreeing to represent their clients on a contingency-fee basis and losing the suit. Recognizing that the difference between fees and costs might not be apparent to prospective clients, Ohio required attorneys to disclose that a contingency fee arrangement might still require the client to pay some money to the attorney. This required disclosure was factually accurate. That the disclosure may have caused controversy, for example by discouraging customers from hiring lawyers who offered contingency-fee arrangements because they feared “hidden costs” or by harming the reputation of the lawyers who offered such fee arrangements, did not affect the constitutional analysis. What mattered was that the disclosure provided accurate factual information to the consumer. We therefore conclude that *Zauderer* requires only that the information be “purely factual.”

c. Application of *Zauderer* Test

Under *Zauderer*, compelled disclosure of commercial speech complies with the First Amendment if the information in the disclosure is reasonably related to a substantial governmental interest and is purely factual. The question before us is whether the speech compelled by the Berkeley ordinance satisfies this test.

i. Reasonably Related to a Substantial Governmental Interest

There is no question that protecting the health and safety of consumers is a substantial governmental interest. *See, e.g., Posadas de Puerto Rico Assocs. v. Tourism Co. of Puerto Rico*, 478 U.S. 328, 341 (1986) (“[H]ealth, safety, and welfare constitute[] a ‘substantial’ governmental interest”). The federal government and Berkeley have both sought to further that interest. By adopting SAR limits on exposure to RF radiation, the FCC has furthered the interest of protecting the health and safety of cell phone users in the United States. It has done so by adopting a highly protective policy, setting low SAR limits on RF radiation and compelling cell phone manufacturers to disclose information to cell phone users that will allow them to avoid exceeding those limits. By passing its ordinance, the City of Berkeley has furthered that same interest. After finding that cell phone users are largely unaware of the FCC policy and of the information in their user manuals, the Berkeley City Council decided to compel retailers in Berkeley to provide, in summary form, the same information that the FCC already requires cell phone manufacturers to provide to those same consumers, and to direct those consumers to their user manuals for more detailed information. *See* Jensen Decl., Ex. A (survey) (reflecting that a majority of persons surveyed were not “aware that the government’s radiation tests to assure the safety of cell phones assume that a cell phone would not be carried against your body, but would instead be held at least 1 to 15 millimeters from your body”).

CTIA argues strenuously that radio-frequency radiation from cell phones has not been proven dangerous to consumers. Limiting itself to research published when the



---

record was made in this case, CTIA is correct in pointing out that there was nothing then before the district court showing that such radiation had been proven dangerous. But this is beside the point. The fact that RF radiation from cell phones had not been proven dangerous was well known to the FCC in 1996 when it adopted SAR limits to RF radiation; was well known in 2013 when it refused to exclude cell phones from its rule adopting SAR limits; and was well known in 2015 when it required cell phone manufacturers to tell consumers how to avoid exceeding SAR limits. After extensive consultation with federal agencies with expertise about the health effects of radio-frequency radiation, the FCC decided, despite the lack of proof of dangerousness, that the best policy was to adopt SAR limits with a large margin of safety.

The FCC concluded that requiring cell phone manufacturers to inform consumers in their users manuals of SAR limits on RF radiation, and to tell them how to avoid excessive exposure, furthered the federal government's interest in protecting their health and safety. The City of Berkeley concluded that consumers were largely unaware of the contents of their users manuals. Agreeing with the FCC that the information about SAR limits and methods of avoiding excessive exposure is important, Berkeley requires cell phone retailers to provide some of that same information to consumers and to direct them to their user manuals for further details. We are not in a position to disagree with the conclusions of FCC and Berkeley that this compelled disclosure is "reasonably related" to protection of the health and safety of consumers.

## ii. Purely Factual

CTIA argues that Berkeley's compelled disclosure is not "purely factual" within the meaning of *Zauderer*. We disagree.

For the convenience of the reader, we again provide the full text of the compelled disclosure:

The City of Berkeley requires that you be provided the following notice:

To assure safety, the Federal Government requires that cell phones meet radio-frequency (RF) exposure guidelines. If you carry or use your phone in a pants or shirt pocket or tucked into a bra when the phone is ON and connected to a wireless network, you may exceed the federal guidelines for exposure to RF radiation. Refer to the instructions in your phone or user manual for information about how to use your phone safely.

Berkeley Mun. Code § 9.96.030(A) (2015).

The text of the compelled disclosure is literally true. We take it sentence by sentence:

(1) "To assure safety, the Federal Government requires that cell phones meet radio-frequency (RF) exposure guidelines." This statement is true. As recounted above, beginning in 1996 the federal government has set RF exposure guidelines with which cell phones must comply.

(2) “If you carry or use your cell phone in a pants or shirt pocket or tucked into a bra when the phone is ON and connected to a wireless network, you may exceed the federal guidelines for exposure to RF radiation.” This statement is also true. The FCC has established SAR limits for RF radiation, and has concluded that maintaining a certain separation between a cell phone and the user’s body protect consumers from exceeding these limits.

(3) “Refer to the instructions in your phone or user manual for information about how to use your phone safely.” This sentence is an instruction rather than a direct factual statement. However, it clearly implies a factual statement that “information about how to use your phone safely” in compliance with the FCC’s RF “exposure guidelines” “to assure safety,” may be found either in a cell phone or user manual. This implied statement, too, is true.

We recognize, of course, that a statement may be literally true but nonetheless misleading and, in that sense, untrue. That is what CTIA argues here. CTIA argues that the compelled disclosure is inflammatory and misleading, and that it is therefore not “purely factual.” CTIA bases its argument solely on the text of the ordinance.

CTIA argues that “[t]he Ordinance requires an inflammatory warning about unfounded safety risks”; that “[t]he Ordinance clearly and deliberately suggests that the federal RF energy testing guideline (the SAR limit) is the demarcation point of ‘safety’ for cell phones, such that ‘exposure’ to RF energy above that limit creates a safety hazard”; and that “[t]he Ordinance is misleading for the additional reason that it uses the inflammatory term ‘radiation,’ which is fraught with negative associations, in

order to stoke consumer anxiety.” CTIA argues further that the phrase “RF radiation” is “fraught with negative associations,” that it is used in the compelled disclosure “in order to stoke consumer anxiety,” and that it is therefore not “purely factual.”

We read the text differently. The first sentence tells consumers that cell phones are required to meet federal “RF exposure guidelines” in order “[t]o assure safety.” Far from inflammatory, this statement is largely reassuring. It assures consumers that the cell phones they are about to buy or lease meet federally imposed safety guidelines.

The second sentence tells consumers what to do in order to avoid exceeding federal guidelines. This statement may not be reassuring, but it is hardly inflammatory. It provides in summary form information that the FCC has concluded that consumers should know in order to ensure their safety. Indeed, the FCC specifically requires cell phone manufacturers to provide this information to consumers. *See* “FCC Exposure Procedures” § 4.2.2(d) (“Specific information must be included in the operating manuals to enable users to select body-worn accessories that meet the minimum *test separation distance* requirements. . . . All supported body-worn accessory operating configurations must be clearly disclosed to users, *through conspicuous instructions in the user guide and user manual*, to ensure unsupported operations are avoided.”) (emphasis added).

The third sentence tells consumers to consult their user manuals to obtain further information—that is, to obtain the very information the FCC requires cell phone manufacturers to provide in “conspicuous instructions” in user manuals.

Further, the phrase “RF radiation,” used in the second sentence, is precisely the phrase the FCC has used, beginning in 1996, to refer to radio-frequency emissions from cell phones. *See* FCC Guidelines for Radio frequency Radiation at ¶ 1, *supra* at 9 (“radio-frequency (RF) radiation”). We do not fault Berkeley for using the term “RF radiation” when referring to cell phone emissions when it is not only the technically correct term, but also the term the FCC itself uses to refer to such emissions.

Finally, we note that the Berkeley ordinance allows a cell phone retailer to add to the compelled disclosure. If a retailer is concerned, as CTIA contends it should be, that the term “RF radiation” is inflammatory and misleading, the retailer may add to the compelled disclosure any further statement it sees fit to add. *See* § 9.96.030(B) (“The paper on which the notice is printed may contain other information in the discretion of the Cell phone retailer[.]”). CTIA has put nothing in the record to indicate that any Berkeley retailer has felt it necessary, or even useful, to add explanatory information about the nature of RF radiation. Nor has CTIA presented any evidence in the district court showing how Berkeley consumers have understood the compelled disclosure, or evidence showing that sales of cell phones in Berkeley were, or are likely to be, depressed as a result of the compelled disclosure.

#### d. Likelihood of Success

Based on the foregoing, we conclude that CTIA has little likelihood of success on its First Amendment claim that the disclosure compelled by the Berkeley ordinance is unconstitutional.

## 2. Preemption

### a. Conflict Preemption

“Federal preemption occurs when: (1) Congress enacts a statute that explicitly preempts state law; (2) state law actually conflicts with federal law; or (3) federal law occupies a legislative field to such an extent that it is reasonable to conclude that Congress left no room for state regulation in the legislative field.” *Chae v. SLM Corp.*, 593 F.3d 936, 941 (9th Cir. 2010) (internal quotation marks omitted). CTIA contends that Berkeley’s compelled disclosure is invalid because of conflict preemption.

“Conflict preemption is implicit preemption of state law that occurs where there is an actual conflict between state and federal law.” *McClellan v. I-Flow Corp.*, 776 F.3d 1035, 1039 (9th Cir. 2015) (citations and internal quotation marks omitted). “When Congress charges an agency with balancing competing objectives, it intends the agency to use its reasoned judgment to weigh the relevant considerations and determine how best to prioritize those objectives. Allowing a state law to impose a different standard [impermissibly] permits a re-balancing of those objectives.” *Farina v. Nokia Inc.*, 625 F.3d 97, 123 (3d Cir. 2010). Conflict preemption arises either when “compliance with both federal and state regulations is a physical impossibility . . . or when state law stands as an obstacle to the accomplishment and execution of the full purposes and objectives of Congress.” *McClellan*, 776 F.3d at 1039 (citations and internal quotation marks omitted). We are concerned here with “obstacle” preemption. CTIA contends that Berkeley’s compelled disclosure creates an impermissible obstacle by requiring more disclosure than is required by the FCC. *See Crosby v. Nat’l Foreign Trade*

---

*Council*, 530 U.S. 363, 373 (2000) (finding preemption where a challenged state law “stands as an obstacle to the accomplishment and execution of the full purposes and objectives of Congress.”) (internal quotation marks omitted).

b. Telecommunications Act of 1996

“Preemption analysis ‘start[s] with the assumption that the historic police powers of the States were not to be superseded by the Federal Act unless that was the clear and manifest purpose of Congress.’” *City of Columbus v. Ours Garage and Wrecker Serv., Inc.*, 536 U.S. 424, 438 (quoting *Medtronic, Inc. v. Lohr*, 518 U.S. 470, 485 (1996)). “Congressional intent, therefore, is the ultimate touchstone of preemption analysis.” *Engine Mfrs. Ass’n v. S. Coast Air Quality Mgmt. Dist.*, 498 F.3d 1031, 1040 (9th Cir. 2007) (citing *Tocher v. City of Santa Ana*, 219 F.3d 1040, 1045 (9th Cir. 2000)).

The FCC’s organic statute is the Telecommunications Act of 1996 (“the Act”), 110 Stat. 56. Legislative hearings, as well as the Act itself, show that Congress desired “uniform, consistent requirements, with adequate safeguards of public health and safety” in nationwide telecom services. See H.R. Rep. No. 104-204, 94 (1996). The Act delegated to the FCC the authority “to ‘make effective rules regarding the environmental effects of [RF] emissions.’” *Farina v. Nokia Inc.*, 625 F.3d 97, 106 (3d Cir. 2010) (quoting 110 Stat. 56, 152). Specifically, “the FCC was tasked not only with protecting the health and safety of the public, but also with ensuring the rapid development of an efficient and uniform network[.]” *Id.* at 125. This led to the creation of the regulatory measures described *supra*.

The centerpiece of CTIA’s argument is that the FCC does not compel cell phone manufacturers to provide information to consumers about SAR limits on RF radiation exposure. CTIA did not make this argument in the district court. Indeed, it conceded in its briefing in the district court that the FCC did so require. *See, e.g.*, Plaintiff’s Reply in Support of Motion for a Preliminary Injunction at 12 (“The manner in which Berkeley requires CTIA’s members to deliver Berkeley’s message—at the point of sale, rather than in a user manual—also distinguishes the Ordinance from *the FCC’s requirements.*”) (emphasis added). CTIA made this argument for the first time in its Reply Brief in this court, and it repeated the argument during oral argument to our panel.

Because CTIA conceded the point in the district court and made its argument to the contrary only before us (and even then only in its Reply Brief and during oral argument), it is waived. *See Conn. Gen. Life Ins. Co. v. New Images of Beverly Hills*, 321 F.3d 878, 882 (9th Cir. 2003) (“This issue is raised for the first time on appeal, and we therefore treat the issue as waived.”); *United States v. Bohn*, 956 F.2d 208, 209 (9th Cir. 1992) (“we ordinarily decline to consider arguments raised for the first time in a reply brief”). But we note that if we were to consider CTIA’s argument on the merits, we would reject it. Beginning in October 2015, the FCC required cell phone manufacturers to inform consumers of minimum separation distances in user manuals. We quoted the relevant passage, *supra* at 12–13. For the convenience of the reader, we repeat much of the passage here:

Specific information *must be included* in the operating manuals to enable users to select body-worn accessories that meet the minimum test separation distance



requirements. Users *must be fully informed* of the operating requirements and restrictions, to the extent that the typical user can easily understand this information, to acquire the required body-worn accessories to maintain compliance. . . . All supported body-worn accessory operating configurations *must be clearly disclosed* to users, through conspicuous instructions in the user guide and user manual, to ensure unsupported operations are avoided.

In re Exposure Procedures and Equipment Authorization Policies for Mobile and Portable Devices, FCC Office of Engineering and Technology Laboratory Division § 4.2.2(d) at 11 (Oct. 23, 2015) (“FCC Exposure Procedures”) (emphases added). The FCC document containing this language “is one of a collection of guidance publications referred to as the *published RF exposure KDB procedures*.” *Id.* § 1 at 1 (emphasis in original). The document specifies that “[a]pplications for equipment authorization must meet all the requirements described in the applicable *published RF exposure KDB procedures*.” *Id.* § 2 at 3 (emphasis in original). That is, in order for a cell phone to be authorized by the FCC for consumer use, it must satisfy the requirements outlined in FCC Exposure Procedures.

### c. Likelihood of Success

Given the FCC’s requirement that cell phone manufacturers must inform consumers of “minimum test separation distance requirements,” and must “clearly disclose[ ]” accessory operating configurations “through conspicuous instructions in the user guide and user manual,

to ensure unsupported operations are avoided,” we see little likelihood of success based on conflict preemption. Berkeley’s compelled disclosure does no more than to alert consumers to the safety disclosures that the FCC requires, and to direct consumers to federally compelled instructions in their user manuals providing specific information about how to avoid excessive exposure. Far from conflicting with federal law and policy, the Berkeley ordinance complements and reinforces it.

#### B. Irreparable Harm

Irreparable harm is relatively easy to establish in a First Amendment case. “[A] party seeking preliminary injunctive relief in a First Amendment context can establish irreparable injury . . . by demonstrating the existence of a colorable First Amendment claim.” *Sammartano v. First Judicial District Court*, 303 F.3d 959, 973 (9th Cir. 2002) (citation omitted), *abrogated on other grounds by Winter v. Natural Res. Def. Council.*, 555 U.S. 7, 22 (2008). We nonetheless conclude that it has not been established here.

“[T]he loss of First Amendment freedoms, for even minimal periods of time, unquestionably constitutes irreparable injury.” *Id.* (citing *Elrod v. Burns*, 427 U.S. 347, 373 (1976)). But the mere assertion of First Amendment rights does not automatically require a finding of irreparable injury. It is the “purposeful unconstitutional suppression of speech [that] constitutes irreparable harm for preliminary injunction purposes.” *Goldie’s Bookstore v. Superior Ct.*, 739 F.2d 466, 472 (9th Cir. 1984). We have already concluded under the *Zauderer* test for compelled disclosure that, on the record before us, Berkeley’s ordinance complies with the First Amendment. *Sammartano*, 303 F.3d at 973–74

(“[T]he test for granting a preliminary injunction is ‘a continuum in which the required showing of harm varies inversely with the required showing of meritoriousness,’ when the harm claimed is a serious infringement on core expressive freedoms, a plaintiff is entitled to an injunction even on a lesser showing of meritoriousness.”). Further, there is nothing in the record showing harm to CTIA or its members through actual or threatened reduction in sales of cell phones caused by the disclosure compelled by the ordinance.

We conclude similarly that there has been no irreparable harm based on preemption.

### C. Balance of the Equities

A court must “balance the interests of all parties and weigh the damage to each” in determining the balance of the equities. *Stormans, Inc. v. Selecky*, 586 F.3d 1109, 1138 (9th Cir. 2009).

CTIA asserts that implementing the ordinance will cause its members substantial economic harm and violate their First Amendment rights. We have concluded that CTIA’s First Amendment claim is unlikely to succeed, and the record provides no evidence to support a finding of economic or reputational harm to cell phone retailers. However, CTIA relies on *Pacific Gas & Electric Co. v. Public Utilities Commission of California*, 475 U.S. 1, 15–16 (1986), to argue that, while disclosures may not violate the First Amendment, the ordinance imposes an “undue burden” on CTIA’s members because it creates significant “pressure to respond,” and that this pressure is “antithetical to the free discussion that the First Amendment seeks to foster.” There is no

showing of any such pressure. The ordinance requires CTIA’s members to inform their customers that the FCC has promulgated regulations concerning RF emissions and to advise customers to refer to their user manuals for more information. To the extent that a cell phone retailer is dissatisfied with the disclosure as written, it can append additional disclosures. Berkeley Ordinance, § 9.96.030(C) (May 26, 2015). CTIA has put nothing in the record showing that any Berkeley cell phone retailer has felt pressured, or has sought to take advantage of the provision of the ordinance allowing it to make any additional disclosure it desires. *See also Milavetz*, 559 U.S. at 250 (“not preventing . . . [the] convey[ance] of any additional information” is one of the essential features of a *Zauderer* disclosure).

Berkeley properly asserts that it has a substantial interest in protecting the health of its citizens. CTIA, on the other hand, has failed to demonstrate any hardship tipping the balance in its favor. We conclude that the balance of the equities favors Berkeley.

#### D. The Public Interest

“The public interest inquiry primarily addresses impact on non-parties rather than parties. It embodies the Supreme Court’s direction that[,] in exercising their sound discretion, courts of equity should pay particular regard for the public consequences in employing the extraordinary remedy of injunction.” *Bernhardt v. Los Angeles Cty.*, 339 F.3d 920, 931–32 (9th Cir. 2003) (internal quotation marks and citation omitted) (citing *Weinberger v. Romero-Barcelo*, 456 U.S. 305, 312 (1982)). We agree with the district court that an injunction would injure the public interest in having a free flow of accurate information.

---

“Protection of the robust and free flow of accurate information is the principal First Amendment justification for protecting commercial speech, and requiring disclosure of truthful information promotes that goal.” *Nat’l Elec. Mfrs. Ass’n*, 272 F.3d at 114. The district court found that while “‘accurate and balanced disclosures regarding RF energy are already available’ . . . there is evidence that the public does not know about those disclosures.” (citing Jensen Decl., Ex. A (survey)). Because “disclosure furthers, rather than hinders . . . the efficiency of the ‘marketplace of ideas,’” we hold that the ordinance is in the public interest and that an injunction would harm that interest. *See Nat’l Elec. Mfrs. Ass’n*, 272 F.3d at 114.

#### Conclusion

Our assessment of the probability of CTIA’s success on the merits, the likelihood of irreparable harm, the balance of the hardships, and the public interest lead us to conclude that the district court did not abuse its discretion in denying preliminary injunctive relief to CTIA. Accordingly, the district court’s order denying such relief is

**AFFIRMED.**

---

FRIEDLAND, Circuit Judge, dissenting in part:

The majority interprets the sentences in Berkeley’s forced disclosure statement one at a time and holds that each is “literally true.” But consumers would not read those sentences in isolation the way the majority does. Taken as a whole, the most natural reading of the disclosure warns that carrying a cell phone in one’s pocket is unsafe. Yet Berkeley has not attempted to argue, let alone to prove, that message is true.

It is clear that the First Amendment prevents the government from requiring businesses to make false or misleading statements about their own products. *See Video Software Dealers Ass’n v. Schwarzenegger*, 556 F.3d 950, 967 (9th Cir. 2009), *aff’d sub nom. Brown v. Entm’t Merchs. Ass’n*, 564 U.S. 786 (2011). Because—at least on the current record—that is what Berkeley’s ordinance would do, I believe the ordinance likely violates the First Amendment and therefore should have been preliminarily enjoined.<sup>1</sup> *See Klein v. City of San Clemente*, 584 F.3d 1196, 1207–08 (9th Cir. 2009) (“Both this court and the Supreme Court have repeatedly held that ‘[t]he loss of First Amendment freedoms, for even minimal periods of time, unquestionably constitutes irreparable injury.’” (quoting *Elrod v. Burns*, 427 U.S. 347, 373 (1976))).

## I

Berkeley’s ordinance requires stores selling cell phones to provide a disclosure stating:

---

<sup>1</sup> I agree with the majority’s preemption analysis so dissent only from sections IV.A.1., IV.B., IV.C., and IV.D. of the majority opinion.

---

To assure safety, the Federal Government requires that cell phones meet radio-frequency (RF) exposure guidelines. If you carry or use your phone in a pants or shirt pocket or tucked into a bra when the phone is ON and connected to a wireless network, you may exceed the federal guidelines for exposure to RF radiation. Refer to the instructions in your phone or use manual for information about how to use your phone safely.

Berkeley Mun. Code § 9.96.030(A) (2015).

The majority parses these sentences individually and concludes that each is “literally true.” In my view, this approach misses the forest for the trees. On its face, the disclosure begins and ends with references to safety, plainly conveying that the intervening language describes something unsafe. Indeed, the disclosure directs consumers to their user manuals for instructions on “how to use your phone safely.” The message of the disclosure as a whole is clear: carrying a phone “in a pants or shirt pocket or tucked into a bra” is *not* safe. Yet that implication is a problem for Berkeley because it has not offered any evidence that carrying a cell phone in a pocket is in fact unsafe. Instead, it has expressly denied that the required disclosure conveys that message. I disagree.

Berkeley insists the ordinance “rests exclusively upon existing FCC regulations.” But those regulations communicate something far different than does the ordinance. The FCC guidelines make clear that they are designed to incorporate a many-fold safety factor, such that exposure to radiation in excess of the guideline level is considered by the FCC to be safe:

Our current RF exposure guidelines . . . include[e] a significant “safety” factor, whereby the exposure limits are set at a level on the order of 50 times below the level at which adverse biological effects have been observed in laboratory animals as a result of tissue heating resulting from RF exposure. This “safety” factor can well accommodate a variety of variables such as different physical characteristics and individual sensitivities—and even the potential for exposures to occur in excess of our limits *without posing a health hazard to humans*.

In re Reassessment of FCC Radiofrequency Exposure Limits and Policies, 28 FCC Rcd. 3498, 3582 (Mar. 29, 2013) (emphasis added). There is thus no evidence in the record that the message conveyed by the ordinance is true.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup> Because even under *Zauderer v. Office of Disciplinary Counsel of Supreme Court of Ohio*, 471 U.S. 626 (1985), any forced disclosure statement must be truthful, *see id.* at 651, I do not think that any discussion of *Zauderer* is appropriate in this case. If nevertheless I were to consider the extent of *Zauderer*'s applicability, as the majority does, I would be inclined to conclude that *Zauderer* applies only when the government compels a truthful disclosure to counter a false or misleading advertisement. Given that the disclosure in *Zauderer* itself prevented an advertisement from being misleading, I have serious doubt that the Supreme Court intended the *Zauderer* test to apply in broader circumstances. *See id.* (“[W]e hold that an advertiser’s rights are adequately protected as long as disclosure requirements are reasonably related to the State’s interest in preventing deception of consumers.”). The majority’s contrary conclusion also seems to me to be in tension with our decision in *Video Software Dealers*, which treated *Zauderer* as applying only in the context of disclosures aimed at combatting otherwise misleading advertising. *See* 556 F.3d at 967 (“[T]he labeling requirement



---

## II

The First Amendment clearly does not permit the government to force businesses to make false or misleading statements about their products. In *Video Software Dealers*, we considered a challenge to a California law requiring that “violent” video games be labeled with a sticker that said “18” and preventing the sale or rental of violent video games to minors. 556 F.3d at 953–54. After striking down the law’s sale and rental prohibition, we concluded that continuing to require the label “18” “would arguably . . . convey a false statement” that minors could not buy or rent the video game, and was therefore unconstitutional. *Id.* at 965–67. The same principle applies here: the First Amendment prohibits Berkeley from compelling retailers to communicate a misleading message. I would thus hold that CTIA is likely to succeed on the merits of its First Amendment challenge.

There are downsides to false, misleading, or unsubstantiated product warnings. Psychological and other social science research suggests that overuse may cause people to pay less attention to warnings generally: “[A]s the number of warnings grows and the prevalence of warnings about low level risks increases, people will increasingly ignore or disregard them.” J. Paul Frantz et al., *Potential Problems Associated with Overusing Warnings*, Proceedings of the Human Factors & Ergonomics Soc’y 43rd Ann. Meeting 916, 916 (1999). Relatedly, “[w]arnings about very minor risks or risks that are extremely remote have raised concerns about negative effects on the believability and

---

fails *Zauderer*’s rational relationship test, which asks if the ‘disclosure requirements are reasonably related to the State’s interest in preventing deception of customers.’” (quoting *Zauderer*, 471 U.S. at 651)).

credibility of warnings. . . . In essence, such warnings represent apparent false alarms as they appear to be ‘crying wolf.’” *Id.* at 918; *see also* David W. Stewart & Ingrid M. Martin, *Intended and Unintended Consequences of Warning Messages: A Review and Synthesis of Empirical Research*, 13 J. Pub. Pol’y & Marketing 1, 7 (1994). If Berkeley wants consumers to listen to its warnings, it should stay quiet until it is prepared to present evidence of a wolf.



# iPhone 3G

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

Important Product  
Information Guide

This *Important Product Information Guide* contains safety, handling, disposal and recycling, regulatory, and software license information, as well as the one-year limited warranty for iPhone.

Look for recycling, disposal, and other environmental information in the *iPhone User Guide* at: [support.apple.com/manuals/iphone](http://support.apple.com/manuals/iphone)



Read all safety information below and operating instructions before using iPhone to avoid injury. For detailed operating instructions read the *iPhone User Guide* on your iPhone by visiting [help.apple.com/iphone](http://help.apple.com/iphone) or using the iPhone User Guide bookmark in Safari. For downloadable versions of the *iPhone User Guide* and the latest version of this *Important Product Information Guide*, visit: [support.apple.com/manuals/iphone](http://support.apple.com/manuals/iphone)

## Important Safety Information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or other injury or damage.

**Handling iPhone** Do not drop, disassemble, open, crush, bend, deform, puncture, shred, microwave, incinerate, paint, or insert foreign objects into iPhone.

**Avoiding Water and Wet Locations** Do not use iPhone in rain, or near washbasins or other wet locations. Take care not to spill any food or liquid on iPhone. In case iPhone gets wet, unplug all cables, turn off iPhone (press and hold the Sleep/Wake button, and then slide the onscreen slider) before cleaning, and allow it to dry thoroughly before turning it on again. Do not attempt to dry iPhone with an external heat source, such as a microwave oven or hair dryer. An iPhone that has been damaged as a result of exposure to liquids is not serviceable.

**Repairing or Modifying iPhone** Never attempt to repair or modify iPhone yourself. Disassembling iPhone, including the removal of external screws, may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. iPhone does not contain any user-serviceable parts, except for the SIM card and SIM tray. Service should only be provided by an Apple authorized wireless service provider. If iPhone has been submerged in water, punctured, or subjected to a severe fall, do not use it until you take it to an Apple authorized wireless service provider. For service information, choose iPhone Help from the Help menu in iTunes or go to: [www.apple.com/support/iphone/service/faq](http://www.apple.com/support/iphone/service/faq)

**Battery Replacement** The rechargeable battery in iPhone should be replaced only by Apple or an Apple authorized wireless service provider. For more information about battery replacement service, go to: [www.apple.com/support/iphone/service/battery](http://www.apple.com/support/iphone/service/battery)

**Charging iPhone** To charge iPhone, only use the Apple Dock Connector to USB Cable with an Apple USB Power Adapter or a high-power USB port on

another device that is compliant with the USB 2.0 or 1.1 standards, another Apple-branded product or accessory designed to work with iPhone, or a third-party accessory certified to use Apple's "Works with iPhone" logo.

Read all safety instructions for any products and accessories before using with iPhone. Apple is not responsible for the operation of third-party accessories or their compliance with safety and regulatory standards.

When you use the Apple USB Power Adapter to charge iPhone, make sure that the power adapter is fully assembled before you plug it into a power outlet. Then insert the Apple USB Power Adapter firmly into the power outlet. Do not connect or disconnect the Apple USB Power Adapter with wet hands.

The Apple USB Power Adapter may become warm during normal use. Always allow adequate ventilation around the Apple USB Power Adapter and use care when handling. Unplug the Apple USB Power Adapter if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power cord or plug has become frayed or damaged.
- The adapter is exposed to rain, liquid, or excessive moisture.
- The adapter case has become damaged.
- You suspect the adapter needs service or repair.
- You want to clean the adapter.

**Avoiding Hearing Damage** Permanent hearing loss may occur if the receiver, earbuds, headphones, speakerphone, or earpieces are used at high volume.

Set the volume to a safe level. You can adapt over time to a higher volume of sound that may sound normal but can be damaging to your hearing. If you experience ringing in your ears or muffled speech, stop listening and have your hearing checked. The louder the volume, the less time is required before your hearing could be affected. Hearing experts suggest that to protect your hearing:

- Limit the amount of time you use the receiver, earbuds, headphones, speakerphone, or earpieces at high volume.
- Avoid turning up the volume to block out noisy surroundings.
- Turn the volume down if you can't hear people speaking near you.

For information about how to set a maximum volume limit on iPhone, see the *iPhone User Guide*.

**Emergency Calls** You should not rely on wireless devices for essential communications, such as medical emergencies. Use of iPhone to call emergency services may not work in all locations. Emergency numbers and services vary by region, and sometimes an emergency call cannot be placed due to network availability or environmental interference. Some cellular networks may not accept an emergency call from iPhone if it does not have a SIM, the SIM is PIN-locked, or if you have not activated your iPhone.

**Driving and Riding Safely** Use of iPhone alone or with headphones (even if used only in one ear) while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle is not recommended and is illegal in some areas. Check and obey the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices like iPhone in the areas where you

drive or ride. Be careful and attentive while driving or riding a bicycle. If you decide to use iPhone while driving, keep in mind the following guidelines:<sup>1</sup>

- **Give full attention to driving or riding and to the road.**  
Using a mobile device while driving or riding may be distracting. If you find it disruptive or distracting while operating any type of vehicle, riding a bicycle, or performing any activity that requires your full attention, pull off the road and park before making or answering a call if driving conditions require.
- **Get to know iPhone and its features such as favorites, recents, and speakerphone.**  
These features help you to place your call without taking your attention off the road. See the *iPhone User Guide* for more information.
- **Use a hands-free device.**  
Add an extra layer of convenience and safety to your iPhone with one of the many hands-free accessories available.
- **Position iPhone within easy reach.**  
Keep your eyes on the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voicemail answer it for you.
- **Try to plan calls when your car will be stationary.**  
Assess the traffic before dialing, or place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic.
- **Let the person you are speaking with know you are driving.**  
If necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions. Driving in rain, sleet, snow, ice, fog, and even heavy traffic can be hazardous.
- **Do not text, email, take notes, look up phone numbers, or perform any other activities that require your attention while driving.**  
Composing or reading texts and emails, jotting down a to-do list, or flipping through your address book takes attention away from your primary responsibility, driving safely.
- **Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may be distracting.**  
Make people you are talking with aware you are driving and suspend conversations that have the potential to divert your attention from the road.

**Navigating Safely** If your iPhone has applications that provide maps, directions or location-based navigation assistance, these applications should only be used for basic navigation assistance and should not be relied on to determine precise locations, proximity, distance, or direction.

Maps, directions, and location-based applications provided by Apple depend on data collected and services provided by third parties. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all geographic areas, resulting in maps, directions or location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided on iPhone to your surroundings and defer to posted signs to resolve any discrepancies.

<sup>1</sup> Adapted from the CTIA-The Wireless Association<sup>®</sup> Safe Driving Tips.

Do not use location-based applications while performing activities that require your full attention. For important information about driving safety, see the "Driving and Riding Safely" section. Always comply with posted signs and the laws and regulations in the areas where you are using iPhone.

**Seizures, Blackouts, and Eyestrain** A small percentage of people may be susceptible to blackouts or seizures (even if they have never had one before) when exposed to flashing lights or light patterns such as when playing games or watching video. If you have experienced seizures or blackouts or have a family history of such occurrences, you should consult a physician before playing games (if available) or watching videos on your iPhone. Discontinue use of iPhone and consult a physician if you experience headaches, blackouts, seizures, convulsion, eye or muscle twitching, loss of awareness, involuntary movement, or disorientation. To reduce risk of headaches, blackouts, seizures, and eyestrain, avoid prolonged use, hold iPhone some distance from your eyes, use iPhone in a well lit room, and take frequent breaks.

**Glass Parts** The outside cover of the iPhone screen is made of glass. This glass could break if iPhone is dropped on a hard surface or receives a substantial impact. If the glass chips or cracks, do not touch or attempt to remove the broken glass. Stop using iPhone until the glass is replaced by an Apple authorized wireless service provider. Glass cracked due to misuse or abuse is not covered under the warranty.

**Choking Hazards** iPhone contains small parts, which may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep iPhone and its accessories away from small children.

**Repetitive Motion** When you perform repetitive activities such as typing or playing games on iPhone, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, arms, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. Take frequent breaks and if you have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.

**Potentially Explosive Atmospheres** Turn off iPhone (press and hold the Sleep/Wake button, and then slide the onscreen slider) when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere. Do not charge iPhone, and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire, resulting in serious injury or even death.

Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, marked clearly. Potential areas may include: fueling areas (such as gas stations); below deck on boats; fuel or chemical transfer or storage facilities; vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane); areas where the air contains chemicals or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders); and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

**For Vehicles Equipped with an Air Bag** An air bag inflates with great force. Do not store iPhone or any of its accessories in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area.

**Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy** iPhone contains radio transmitters and receivers. When on, iPhone receives and sends out radio frequency (RF) energy through its antenna. The iPhone cellular antenna is located on the back of iPhone near the dock connector. The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® antenna

is located near the back top edge of the iPhone. iPhone is designed and manufactured to comply with the limits for exposure to RF energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the United States, Industry Canada (IC) of Canada, and regulating entities of Japan, the European Union, and other countries. The exposure standard employs a unit of measurement known as the specific absorption rate, or SAR. The SAR limit applicable to iPhone set by the FCC is 1.6 watts per kilogram (W/kg), 1.6 W/kg by Industry Canada, and 2.0 W/kg by the Council of the European Union. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions (i.e., at the ear and worn on the body) specified by these agencies, with iPhone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although SAR is determined at the highest certified power level in each frequency band, the actual SAR level of iPhone while in operation can be well below the maximum value because iPhone adjusts its cellular transmitting power based in part on proximity to the wireless network. In general, the closer you are to a cellular base station, the lower the cellular transmitting power level.

iPhone has been tested,<sup>2</sup> and meets the FCC, IC, and European Union RF exposure guidelines for cellular, Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth operation. When tested for use at the ear and for body-worn operation (with iPhone positioned 15 mm (5/8 inch) from the body), iPhone's maximum SAR value for each frequency band is outlined below:

Frequency Band	Body	Ear	FCC & IC 1g SAR Limit (W/kg)
GSM 850	1.030	0.521	1.6
GSM 1900	0.522	1.290	1.6
UMTS II 1900	0.402	1.388	1.6
UMTS V 850	0.733	0.516	1.6
Wi-Fi	0.088	0.779	1.6

Frequency Band	Body	Ear	EU 10g SAR Limit (W/kg)
GSM 900	0.559	0.235	2.0
GSM 1800	0.369	0.780	2.0

<sup>2</sup> The device was tested by Compliance Certification Services, Fremont, CA according to measurement standards and procedures specified in FCC OET Bulletin 65, Supplement C (Edition 01-01) and IEEE P1528.1, April 21 2003 and Canada RSS 102. iPhone adheres to the European Council Recommendation of 12 July 1999 on the Limitation of Exposure of the General Public to Electromagnetic Fields [1999/519/EC].



Frequency Band	Body	Ear	EU 10g SARLimit (W/kg)
UMTS I 2100	0.231	0.878	2.0
Wi-Fi	0.051	0.371	2.0

iPhone's SAR measurement may exceed the FCC exposure guidelines for body-worn operation if positioned less than 15 mm (5/8 inch) from the body (e.g. when carrying iPhone in your pocket). For optimal mobile device performance and to be sure that human exposure to RF energy does not exceed the FCC, IC, and European Union guidelines, always follow these instructions and precautions: When on a call using the built-in audio receiver in iPhone, hold iPhone with the dock connector pointed down toward your shoulder to increase separation from the antenna. When using iPhone near your body for voice calls or for wireless data transmission over a cellular network, keep iPhone at least 15 mm (5/8 inch) away from the body, and only use carrying cases, belt clips, or holders that do not have metal parts and that maintain at least 15 mm (5/8 inch) separation between iPhone and the body.

If you are still concerned about exposure to RF energy, you can further limit your exposure by limiting the amount of time using iPhone, since time is a factor in how much exposure a person receives, and by placing more distance between your body and iPhone, since exposure level drops off dramatically with distance.

**Additional Information** For more information from the FCC about exposure to RF energy, see: [www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety](http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety)

The FCC and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) also maintain a consumer website at [www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm](http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm) to address inquiries about the safety of mobile phones. Please check the website periodically for updates.

For information about the scientific research related to RF energy exposure, see the EMF Research Database maintained by the World Health Organization at: [www.who.int/emf](http://www.who.int/emf)

**Radio Frequency Interference** Radio-frequency emissions from electronic equipment can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment causing them to malfunction. Although iPhone is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emission in countries such as the United States, Canada, the European Union, and Japan, the wireless transmitters and electrical circuits in iPhone may cause interference in other electronic equipment. Therefore, please take the following precautions:

**Aircraft** Use of iPhone may be prohibited while traveling in aircraft. For more information about using Airplane Mode to turn off the iPhone wireless transmitters, see the *iPhone User Guide*.

**Vehicles** Radio frequency emissions from iPhone may affect electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle.

**Pacemakers** The Health Industry Manufacturers Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm (6 inches) be maintained between a handheld wireless phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. Persons with pacemakers:

- Should *always* keep iPhone more than 15 cm (6 inches) from the pacemaker when the phone is turned on
- Should not carry iPhone in a breast pocket
- Should use the ear opposite the pacemaker to minimize the potential for interference

If you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place, turn iPhone *off* immediately.

**Hearing Aids** iPhone may interfere with hearing aids. If it does, consult the hearing aid manufacturer or your physician for alternatives or remedies.

**Other Medical Devices** If you use any other personal medical device, consult the device manufacturer or your physician to determine if it is adequately shielded from radio frequency emissions from iPhone.

**Health Care Facilities** Hospitals and health care facilities may use equipment that is particularly sensitive to external radio frequency emissions. Turn iPhone off when staff or posted signs instruct you to do so.

**Blasting Areas and Posted Facilities** To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn off iPhone when in a “blasting area” or in areas posted “Turn off two-way radio.” Obey all signs and instructions.

## Important Handling Information

**NOTICE:** Failure to follow these handling instructions could result in damage to iPhone or other property.

**Carrying and Handling iPhone** iPhone contains sensitive components. Do not bend, drop, or crush iPhone. If your iPhone’s back case has a high-gloss finish, handle with care to maintain its appearance. If you are concerned about scratching, you can use one of the many cases sold separately.

**Using Connectors and Ports** Never force a connector into a port. Check for obstructions on the port. If the connector and port don’t join with reasonable ease, they probably don’t match. Make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

**Keeping iPhone Within Acceptable Temperatures** Operate iPhone in a place where the temperature is between 0° and 35° C (32° to 95° F). Low- or high-temperature conditions might temporarily shorten battery life or cause iPhone to temporarily stop working properly. Avoid dramatic changes in temperature or humidity when using iPhone as condensation may form on or within iPhone.

Store iPhone in a place where the temperature is between -20° and 45° C (-4° to 113° F). Don’t leave iPhone in your car, because temperatures in parked cars can exceed this range.

When you're using iPhone or charging the battery, it is normal for iPhone to get warm. The exterior of iPhone functions as a cooling surface that transfers heat from inside the unit to the cooler air outside.

**Keeping the Outside of iPhone Clean** To clean iPhone, unplug all cables and turn off iPhone (press and hold the Sleep/Wake button, and then slide the onscreen slider). Then use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth. Avoid getting moisture in openings. Don't use window cleaners, household cleaners, aerosol sprays, solvents, alcohol, ammonia, or abrasives to clean iPhone.

## Certification and Compliance

**Important:** Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the EMC and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product. This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

## FCC Compliance Statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## Canadian Compliance Statement

Complies with the Canadian ICES-003 Class B specifications. Cet appareil numérique de la Classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada. This device complies with RSS 210 of Industry Canada. This Class B device meets all the requirements of the Canadian interference-causing equipment regulations. Cet appareil numérique de la Classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

## European Union Regulatory Conformance

The equipment complies with the RF Exposure Requirement 1999/519/EC, Council Recommendation of 12 July 1999 on the limitation of exposure of the general public to electromagnetic fields (0–300 GHz). This equipment meets the following conformance standards:

EN 300 328, EN 301 489-17, EN 301 511, EN 301 908, EN 50385

## EU Declaration of Conformity

**Български** Apple Inc. декларира, че този клетъчен, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth предавател е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими правила на Директива 1999/5/EC.

**Česky** Apple Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že tento cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth g je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

**Dansk** Undertegnede Apple Inc. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Deutsch** Hiermit erkläre Apple Inc., dass sich das Gerät cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

**Eesti** Käesolevaga kinnitab Apple Inc. seadme cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

**English** Hereby, Apple Inc. declares that this cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Español** Por medio de la presente Apple Inc. declara que el cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Ελληνική** ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Apple Inc. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/EK.

**Français** Par la présente Apple Inc. déclare que l'appareil cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

**Islenska** Hér með lýsir Apple Inc. yfir því að cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

**Italiano** Con la presente Apple Inc. dichiara che questo cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

**Latviski** Ar šo Apple Inc. deklarē, ka cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

**Lietuvių** Šiuo Apple Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

**Magyar** Alulírott, Apple Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

**Malti** Hawnehkk, Apple Inc., jiddikjara li dan cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

**Nederlands** Hierbij verklaart Apple Inc. dat het toestel cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

**Norsk** Norsk Apple Inc. erklærer herved at utstyret mobiltelefon, Wi-Fi og Bluetooth er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

**Polski** Niniejszym Apple Inc. oświadcza, że cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

**Português** Apple Inc. declara que este cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

**Româna** Prin prezenta Apple Inc. declară că acest aparat cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth este în conformitate cu cerințele esențiale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

**Slovensko** Apple Inc. izjavlja, da je ta cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

**Slovensky** Apple Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

**Suomi** Apple Inc. vakuuttaa täten että cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

**Svenska** Härmed intygar Apple Inc. att denna cellular, Wi-Fi, & Bluetooth står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

A copy of the Declaration of Conformity is available at:

[www.apple.com/euro/compliance](http://www.apple.com/euro/compliance)



iPhone can be used in the following countries:

AT	BG	BE	CY	CZ	DK	EE	FI	FR	DE	GR	HU
IE	IT	LV	LT	LU	MT	NL	PL	PT	RO	SK	SL
ES	SE	GB	IS	LI	NO	CH					

## European Community Restrictions

**Français** Pour usage en intérieur uniquement. Consultez l'Autorité de Régulation des Communications Electroniques et des Postes (ARCEP) pour connaître les limites d'utilisation des canaux 1 à 9. [www.arcep.fr](http://www.arcep.fr)

**Italiano** Approvato esclusivamente per l'uso in locali chiusi. L'utilizzo all'esterno dei propri locali è subordinato al rilascio di un'autorizzazione generale.

**Ελλάδα** Για χρήση σε εσωτερικούς χώρους μόνο

## Japan Compliance Statement—VCCI Class B Statement

### 情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制について

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラス B 情報技術装置です。この装置は家庭環境で使用されることを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取扱をしてください。

## Compliance Marks

Singapore	Complies with IDA Standards DB00063	South Africa	TA-2008/712 ICASA APPROVED
United Arab Emirates	TRA ID: 0016472/08 TA: 0016473/08	Russia	 ME67

## iPhone Terms and Conditions

**IMPORTANT:** BY USING YOUR iPhone, YOU ARE AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THE FOLLOWING APPLE AND THIRD PARTY TERMS:

- A. APPLE iPhone SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
- B. NOTICES FROM APPLE
- C. GOOGLE MAPS TERMS AND CONDITIONS
- D. YOUTUBE TERMS AND CONDITIONS

## APPLE INC. iPhone SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

### Single Use License

PLEASE READ THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT (“LICENSE”) CAREFULLY BEFORE USING YOUR iPhone OR DOWNLOADING THE SOFTWARE UPDATE ACCOMPANYING THIS LICENSE. BY USING YOUR iPhone OR DOWNLOADING THIS SOFTWARE UPDATE, AS APPLICABLE, YOU ARE AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, UNLESS YOU RETURN THE iPhone IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLE’S RETURN POLICY. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, DO NOT USE THE iPhone OR DOWNLOAD THIS SOFTWARE UPDATE. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THE LICENSE, YOU MAY RETURN THE iPhone WITHIN THE RETURN PERIOD TO THE APPLE



STORE OR AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR WHERE YOU OBTAINED IT FOR A REFUND, SUBJECT TO APPLE'S RETURN POLICY FOUND AT [http://www.apple.com/legal/sales\\_policies/](http://www.apple.com/legal/sales_policies/).

**1. General.** The software (including Boot ROM code and other embedded software), documentation, interfaces, content, fonts and any data that came with your iPhone ("Original iPhone Software"), as may be updated or replaced by feature enhancements, software updates or system restore software provided by Apple ("iPhone Software Updates"), whether in read only memory, on any other media or in any other form (the Original iPhone Software and iPhone Software Updates are collectively referred to as the "iPhone Software") are licensed, not sold, to you by Apple Inc. ("Apple") for use only under the terms of this License. Apple and its licensors retain ownership of the iPhone Software itself and reserve all rights not expressly granted to you.

Apple will provide you any iPhone OS software updates that it may release from time to time, up to and including the next major iPhone OS software release following the version of iPhone OS software that originally shipped from Apple on your iPhone, for free. For example, if your iPhone originally shipped with iPhone 2.x software, Apple would provide you with any iPhone OS software updates it might release up to and including the iPhone 3.x software release. Such updates and releases may not necessarily include all of the new software features that Apple releases for newer iPhone models.

**2. Permitted License Uses and Restrictions.** (a) Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, you are granted a limited non-exclusive license to use the iPhone Software on a single Apple-branded iPhone. Except as permitted in Section 2(b) below, this License does not allow the iPhone Software to exist on more than one Apple-branded iPhone at a time or on any other phone, and you may not distribute or make the iPhone Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple devices at the same time. This License does not grant you any rights to use Apple proprietary interfaces and other intellectual property in the design, development, manufacture, licensing or distribution of third party devices and accessories, or third party software applications, for use with the iPhone. Some of those rights are available under separate licenses from Apple. For more information on developing third party devices and accessories for the iPhone, please email [madedoripod@apple.com](mailto:madedoripod@apple.com). For more information on developing software applications for the iPhone, please email [devprograms@apple.com](mailto:devprograms@apple.com).

(b) Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, you are granted a limited non-exclusive license to download iPhone Software Updates that may be made available by Apple for your model of the iPhone to update or restore the software on any such iPhone that you own or control. This License does not allow you to update or restore iPhones that you do not control or own, and you may not distribute or make the iPhone Software Updates available over a network where they could be used by multiple devices or multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the iPhone Software Updates stored on your computer in machine-readable form for backup purposes only, provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

(c) You may not and you agree not to, or to enable others to, copy (except as expressly permitted by this License), decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, decrypt, modify, or create derivative works of the iPhone Software or any services provided by the iPhone Software, or any part thereof (except as and only to the extent any foregoing restriction is prohibited by applicable law or to the extent as may be permitted by licensing terms governing use of open-sourced components included with the iPhone Software). Any attempt to do so is a violation of the rights of Apple and its licensors of the iPhone Software.

(d) By storing content on your iPhone you are making a digital copy. In some jurisdictions, it is unlawful to make digital copies without prior permission from the rightsholder. The iPhone Software may be used to reproduce materials so long as such use is limited to reproduction of non-copyrighted materials, materials in which you own the copyright, or materials you are authorized or legally permitted to reproduce.

(e) You agree to use the iPhone Software and the Services (as defined in Section 5 below) in compliance with all applicable laws, including local laws of the country or region in which you reside or in which you download or use the iPhone Software and Services.

**3. Transfer.** You may not rent, lease, lend, sell, redistribute, or sublicense the iPhone Software. You may, however, make a one-time permanent transfer of all of your license rights to the iPhone Software to another party in connection with the transfer of ownership of your iPhone, provided that:

(a) the transfer must include your iPhone and all of the iPhone Software, including all its component parts, original media, printed materials and this License; (b) you do not retain any copies of the iPhone Software, full or partial, including copies stored on a computer or other storage device; and (c) the party receiving the iPhone Software reads and agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this License.

**4. Consent to Use of Non-Personal Data.** (a) **Diagnostic Data.** You agree that Apple and its subsidiaries and agents may collect, maintain, process and use diagnostic, technical and related information, including but not limited to information about your iPhone, computer, system and application software, and peripherals, that is gathered periodically to facilitate the provision of software updates, product support and other services to you (if any) related to the iPhone Software, and to verify compliance with the terms of this License. Apple may use this information, as long as it is in a form that does not personally identify you, to improve our products or to provide services or technologies to you.

(b) **Location Data.** Apple and its partners and licensees may provide certain services through your iPhone that rely upon location information. To provide these services, where available, Apple and its partners and licensees may transmit, collect, maintain, process and use your location data, including the real-time geographic location of your iPhone. The location data collected by Apple is collected in a form that does not personally identify you and may be used by Apple and its partners and licensees to provide location-based products and services. By using any location-based services on your iPhone, you agree and consent to Apple's and its partners' and licensees' transmission, collection, maintenance, processing and use of your location data to provide



such products and services. You may withdraw this consent at any time by not using the location-based features or by turning off the Location Services setting on your iPhone. Not using these features will not impact the non location-based functionality of your iPhone. When using third party applications or services on the iPhone that use or provide location data, you are subject to and should review such third party's terms and privacy policy on use of location data by such third party applications or services.

**5. Services and Third Party Materials.** (a) The iPhone Software enables access to Apple's iTunes Store, App Store and other Apple and third party services and web sites (collectively and individually, "Services"). Use of the Services requires Internet access and use of certain Services requires you to accept additional terms. By using this software in connection with an iTunes Store account, you agree to the latest iTunes Store Terms and Conditions, which you may access and review at <http://www.apple.com/legal/itunes/ww/>.

(b) You understand that by using any of the Services, you may encounter content that may be deemed offensive, indecent, or objectionable, which content may or may not be identified as having explicit language, and that the results of any search or entering of a particular URL may automatically and unintentionally generate links or references to objectionable material. Nevertheless, you agree to use the Services at your sole risk and that Apple shall have no liability to you for content that may be found to be offensive, indecent, or objectionable.

(c) Certain Services may display, include or make available content, data, information, applications or materials from third parties ("Third Party Materials") or provide links to certain third party web sites. By using the Services, you acknowledge and agree that Apple is not responsible for examining or evaluating the content, accuracy, completeness, timeliness, validity, copyright compliance, legality, decency, quality or any other aspect of such Third Party Materials or web sites. Apple, its officers, affiliates and subsidiaries do not warrant or endorse and do not assume and will not have any liability or responsibility to you or any other person for any third-party Services, Third Party Materials or web sites, or for any other materials, products, or services of third parties. Third Party Materials and links to other web sites are provided solely as a convenience to you.

(d) Financial information displayed by any Services is for general informational purposes only and should not be relied upon as investment advice. Before executing any securities transaction based upon information obtained through the Services, you should consult with a financial or securities professional who is legally qualified to give financial or securities advice in your country or region. Location data provided by any Services is for basic navigational purposes only and is not intended to be relied upon in situations where precise location information is needed or where erroneous, inaccurate, time-delayed or incomplete location data may lead to death, personal injury, property or environmental damage. Neither Apple nor any of its content providers guarantees the availability, accuracy, completeness, reliability, or timeliness of stock information, location data or any other data displayed by any Services.

(e) You agree that the Services contain proprietary content, information and material that is owned by Apple and/or its licensors, and is protected by

applicable intellectual property and other laws, including but not limited to copyright, and that you will not use such proprietary content, information or materials in any way whatsoever except for permitted use of the Services or in any manner that is inconsistent with the terms of this License or that infringes any intellectual property rights of a third party or Apple. No portion of the Services may be reproduced in any form or by any means. You agree not to modify, rent, lease, loan, sell, distribute, or create derivative works based on the Services, in any manner, and you shall not exploit the Services in any unauthorized way whatsoever, including but not limited to, using the Services to transmit any computer viruses, worms, trojan horses or other malware, or by trespass or burdening network capacity. You further agree not to use the Services in any manner to harass, abuse, stalk, threaten, defame or otherwise infringe or violate the rights of any other party, and that Apple is not in any way responsible for any such use by you, nor for any harassing, threatening, defamatory, offensive, infringing or illegal messages or transmissions that you may receive as a result of using any of the Services.

(f) In addition, Services and Third Party Materials that may be accessed from, displayed on or linked to from the iPhone are not available in all languages or in all countries. Apple makes no representation that such Services and Materials are appropriate or available for use in any particular location. To the extent you choose to access such Services or Materials, you do so at your own initiative and are responsible for compliance with any applicable laws, including but not limited to applicable local laws. Apple and its licensors reserve the right to change, suspend, remove, or disable access to any Services at any time without notice. In no event will Apple be liable for the removal of or disabling of access to any Services. Apple may also impose limits on the use of or access to certain Services, in any case and without notice or liability.

**6. Termination.** This License is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically or otherwise cease to be effective without notice from Apple if you fail to comply with any term(s) of this License. Upon the termination of this License, you shall cease all use of the iPhone Software. Sections 7, 8, 9, 12 and 13 of this License shall survive any such termination.

**7. Disclaimer of Warranties.** YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, USE OF THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES PERFORMED BY THE IPHONE SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND APPLE AND APPLE'S LICENSORS (COLLECTIVELY REFERRED TO AS "APPLE" FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTIONS 7 AND 8) HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. APPLE DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE IPHONE

SOFTWARE AND SERVICES, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN OR SERVICES PERFORMED BY THE IPHONE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, THAT ANY SERVICE WILL CONTINUE TO BE MADE AVAILABLE, THAT DEFECTS IN THE IPHONE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED, OR THAT THE IPHONE SOFTWARE WILL BE COMPATIBLE OR WORK WITH ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, APPLICATIONS OR THIRD PARTY SERVICES. INSTALLATION OF THIS SOFTWARE MAY AFFECT THE USABILITY OF THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, APPLICATIONS OR THIRD PARTY SERVICES. YOU FURTHER ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE NOT INTENDED OR SUITABLE FOR USE IN SITUATIONS OR ENVIRONMENTS WHERE THE FAILURE OR TIME DELAYS OF, OR ERRORS OR INACCURACIES IN, THE CONTENT, DATA OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY THE IPHONE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES COULD LEAD TO DEATH, PERSONAL INJURY, OR SEVERE PHYSICAL OR ENVIRONMENTAL DAMAGE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE OPERATION OF NUCLEAR FACILITIES, AIRCRAFT NAVIGATION OR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS, AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL, LIFE SUPPORT OR WEAPONS SYSTEMS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY APPLE OR AN APPLE AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE IPHONE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSION AND LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**8. Limitation of Liability.** TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE IPHONE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES OR ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR APPLICATIONS IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE IPHONE SOFTWARE, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF APPLE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THIS LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. In no event shall Apple's total liability to you for all damages (other than as may be required by applicable law in cases involving personal injury) exceed the amount of two hundred and fifty dollars (U.S.\$250.00). The foregoing limitations will apply even if the above stated remedy fails of its essential purpose.

**9. Digital Certificates.** The iPhone Software contains functionality that allows it to accept digital certificates either issued from Apple or from third parties. YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR DECIDING WHETHER OR NOT TO RELY ON A CERTIFICATE WHETHER ISSUED BY APPLE OR A THIRD PARTY. YOUR USE OF DIGITAL CERTIFICATES IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, APPLE MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO MERCHANTABILITY

OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, SECURITY, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO DIGITAL CERTIFICATES.

**10. Export Control.** You may not use or otherwise export or reexport the iPhone Software except as authorized by United States law and the laws of the jurisdiction(s) in which the iPhone Software was obtained. In particular, but without limitation, the iPhone Software may not be exported or re-exported (a) into any U.S. embargoed countries or (b) to anyone on the U.S. Treasury Department's list of Specially Designated Nationals or the U.S. Department of Commerce Denied Person's List or Entity List. By using the iPhone Software, you represent and warrant that you are not located in any such country or on any such list. You also agree that you will not use the iPhone Software for any purposes prohibited by United States law, including, without limitation, the development, design, manufacture or production of missiles, nuclear, chemical or biological weapons.

**11. Government End Users.** The iPhone Software and related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. §2.101, consisting of "Commercial Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation are being licensed to U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. Unpublished rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States.

**12. Controlling Law and Severability.** This License will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, excluding its conflict of law principles. This License shall not be governed by the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded. If for any reason a court of competent jurisdiction finds any provision, or portion thereof, to be unenforceable, the remainder of this License shall continue in full force and effect.

**13. Complete Agreement; Governing Language.** This License constitutes the entire agreement between you and Apple relating to the iPhone Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous understandings regarding such subject matter. No amendment to or modification of this License will be binding unless in writing and signed by Apple. Any translation of this License is done for local requirements and in the event of a dispute between the English and any non-English versions, the English version of this License shall govern, to the extent not prohibited by local law in your jurisdiction.

**14. Third Party Acknowledgements.** Portions of the iPhone Software may utilize or include third party software and other copyrighted material. Acknowledgements, licensing terms and disclaimers for such material are contained in the electronic documentation for the iPhone Software, and your use of such material is governed by their respective terms. Use of the Google Safe Browsing Service is subject to the Google Terms of Service

([http://www.google.com/terms\\_of\\_service.html](http://www.google.com/terms_of_service.html)) and to Google's Privacy Policy (<http://www.google.com/privacypolicy.html>).

**15. Use of MPEG-4; H.264/AVC Notice.** (a) The iPhone Software contains MPEG-4 video encoding and/or decoding functionality. The iPhone Software is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer for (i) encoding video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decoding MPEG-4 video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed by MPEG LA to provide MPEG-4 video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information including that relating to promotional, internal and commercial uses and licensing may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

(b) The iPhone Software contains AVC encoding and/or decoding functionality, commercial use of H.264/AVC requires additional licensing and the following provision applies: THE AVC FUNCTIONALITY IN THE IPHONE SOFTWARE IS LICENSED HEREIN ONLY FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR AVC VIDEO THAT WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. INFORMATION REGARDING OTHER USES AND LICENSES MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA L.L.C. SEE <HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM>.

**16. Yahoo Search Service Restrictions.** The Yahoo Search Service available through Safari is licensed for use only in the following countries and regions: Argentina, Aruba, Australia, Austria, Barbados, Belgium, Bermuda, Brazil, Bulgaria, Canada, Cayman Islands, Chile, Colombia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, El Salvador, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Grenada, Guatemala, Hong Kong, Hungary, Iceland, India, Indonesia, Ireland, Italy, Jamaica, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malaysia, Malta, Mexico, Netherlands, New Zealand, Nicaragua, Norway, Panama, Peru, Philippines, Poland, Portugal, Puerto Rico, Romania, Singapore, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Korea, Spain, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, Sweden, Switzerland, Taiwan, Thailand, The Bahamas, Trinidad and Tobago, Turkey, UK, Uruguay, US and Venezuela.

**17. Microsoft Exchange Notice.** The Microsoft Exchange mail setting in the iPhone Software is licensed only for over-the-air synchronization of information, such as email, contacts, calendar and tasks, between your iPhone and Microsoft Exchange Server or other server software licensed by Microsoft to implement the Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync protocol.

EA0567

Update Rev. 5/8/09

## NOTICES FROM APPLE

If Apple needs to contact you about your product or account, you consent to receive the notices by email. You agree that any such notices that we send you electronically will satisfy any legal communication requirements.



## GOOGLE MAPS TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Thank you for trying out the Google Maps for mobile software application! This page contains the terms and conditions (the "Terms and Conditions") for Google Maps for mobile and the enterprise version of Google Maps for mobile. In order to use this software, including any third party software made available to you in conjunction with this software and/or the related service, (collectively referred to below as "Google Maps for mobile") you agree to be bound by these Terms and Conditions, either on behalf of yourself or on behalf of your employer or other entity. If you are agreeing to be bound by these Terms and Conditions on behalf of your employer or other entity, you represent and warrant that you have full legal authority to bind your employer or such entity to these Terms and Conditions. If you don't have the legal authority to bind, please press "No" when asked whether you agree to these Terms and Conditions, and do not proceed with use of this product.

**Additional Terms** Google Maps for mobile is designed to be used in conjunction with Google's Maps services and other Google services. Accordingly, you agree and acknowledge that your use of Google Maps for mobile is also subject to (a) the specific terms of service for Google Maps (which can be viewed at [http://local.google.com/help/terms\\_local.html](http://local.google.com/help/terms_local.html)) including the content notices applicable thereto (which can be viewed at [http://local.google.com/help/legalnotices\\_local.html](http://local.google.com/help/legalnotices_local.html)), (b) the general Google terms of service (which can be viewed at [http://www.google.com/terms\\_of\\_service.html](http://www.google.com/terms_of_service.html)) and (c) Google's overall privacy policy (which can be viewed at <http://www.google.com/privacypolicy.html>), as well as specific privacy policies, such as the Google Maps for mobile privacy policy included with this application, such provisions being hereby incorporated into these Terms and Conditions by reference to the extent that there is any inconsistency or conflict between such additional terms and these Terms and Conditions, the provisions of these Terms and Conditions take precedence.

**Network Charges** Google does not charge for downloading or using Google Maps for mobile, but depending on your plan and your carrier or provider, your carrier or other provider may charge you for downloading Google Maps for mobile or for use of your mobile phone when you access information or other Google services through Google Maps for mobile.

**Non-Commercial Use Only** Google Maps for mobile is made available to you for your non-commercial use only. This means that you may use it for your personal use only: you may use it at work or at home, to search for anything you want, subject to the terms set out in these Terms and Conditions. You need to obtain Google's permission first, which you can do by contacting [mobile-support@google.com](mailto:mobile-support@google.com), if you want to sell Google Maps for mobile or any information, services, or software associated with or derived from it, or if you want to modify, copy, license, or create derivative works from Google Maps for mobile.

Unless you have our prior written consent, you agree not to modify, adapt, translate, prepare derivative works from, decompile, reverse engineer, disassemble or otherwise attempt to derive source code from Google Maps for mobile.

Furthermore, you may not use Google Maps for mobile in any manner that could damage, disable, overburden, or impair Google's services (e.g., you may not use the Google Maps for mobile in an automated manner), nor may you use Google Maps for mobile in any manner that could interfere with any other party's use and enjoyment of Google's services.

If you have comments on Google Maps for mobile or ideas on how to improve it, please email [mobile-support@google.com](mailto:mobile-support@google.com). Please note that by doing so, you also grant Google and third parties permission to use and incorporate your ideas or comments into Google Maps for mobile (or third party software) without further notice or compensation.

**Intellectual Property** As between you and Google, you agree and acknowledge that Google owns all rights, title and interest in and to Google Maps for mobile, including without limitation all associated Intellectual Property Rights. "Intellectual Property Rights" means any and all rights existing from time to time under patent law, copyright law, trade secret law, trademark law, unfair competition law, and any and all other proprietary rights, and any and all applications, renewals, extensions and restorations thereof, now or hereafter in force and effect worldwide. You agree to not remove, obscure, or alter Google's or any third party's copyright notice, trademarks, or other proprietary rights notices affixed to or contained within or accessed in conjunction with or through the Google Maps for mobile.

**Disclaimer of Warranties** Google and any third party who makes its software available in conjunction with or through Google Maps for mobile disclaim any responsibility for any harm resulting from your use of Google Maps for mobile and/or any third party software accessed in conjunction with or through Google Maps for mobile.

GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER. GOOGLE AND SUCH THIRD PARTIES EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED, AND STATUTORY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF PROPRIETARY RIGHTS. GOOGLE AND ANY SUCH THIRD PARTIES DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES REGARDING THE SECURITY, RELIABILITY, TIMELINESS, AND PERFORMANCE OF GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE AND SUCH THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE.

YOU UNDERSTAND AND AGREE THAT YOU DOWNLOAD AND/OR USE GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE AT YOUR OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND THAT YOU WILL BE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGES TO YOUR COMPUTER OR MOBILE DEVICE SYSTEM OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOAD OR USE OF GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE. SOME STATES OR OTHER JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE AND JURISDICTION TO JURISDICTION.

**Limitation of Liability** UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL GOOGLE OR ANY THIRD PARTY WHO MAKE THEIR SOFTWARE AVAILABLE IN CONJUNCTION WITH OR THROUGH THE GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE BE LIABLE TO ANY USER ON ACCOUNT OF THAT USER'S USE OR MISUSE OF GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE. SUCH LIMITATION OF LIABILITY SHALL APPLY TO PREVENT RECOVERY

OF DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, AND PUNITIVE DAMAGES WHETHER SUCH CLAIM IS BASED ON WARRANTY, CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), OR OTHERWISE, (EVEN IF GOOGLE AND/OR A THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE PROVIDER HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES). SUCH LIMITATION OF LIABILITY SHALL APPLY WHETHER THE DAMAGES ARISE FROM USE OR MISUSE OF AND RELIANCE ON GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE OR ON PRODUCTS OR SERVICES MADE AVAILABLE IN CONJUNCTION WITH OR THROUGH GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE, FROM INABILITY TO USE GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE OR PRODUCTS OR SERVICES MADE AVAILABLE IN CONJUNCTION WITH OR THROUGH THE GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE, OR FROM THE INTERRUPTION, SUSPENSION, OR TERMINATION OF GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE OR PRODUCTS OR SERVICES MADE AVAILABLE IN CONJUNCTION WITH OR THROUGH GOOGLE MAPS FOR MOBILE (INCLUDING SUCH DAMAGES INCURRED BY THIRD PARTIES). SUCH LIMITATION SHALL APPLY NOTWITHSTANDING A FAILURE OF ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY AND TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW. SOME STATES OR OTHER JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**Miscellaneous Provisions** These Terms and Conditions will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to the conflict of laws provisions of California or your actual state or country of residence. If for any reason a court of competent jurisdiction finds any provision or portion of these Terms and Conditions to be unenforceable, the remainder of these Terms and Conditions will continue in full force and effect.

These Terms and Conditions constitute the entire agreement between you and Google with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersede and replace all prior or contemporaneous understandings or agreements, written or oral, regarding such subject matter. Any waiver of any provision of these Terms and Conditions will be effective only if in writing and signed by Google.

September 2007

## YOUTUBE TERMS AND CONDITIONS

<http://www.youtube.com/t/terms>



## Apple One (1) Year Limited Warranty

FOR CONSUMERS, WHO ARE COVERED BY CONSUMER PROTECTION LAWS OR REGULATIONS IN THEIR COUNTRY OF PURCHASE OR, IF DIFFERENT, THEIR COUNTRY OF RESIDENCE, THE BENEFITS CONFERRED BY THIS WARRANTY ARE IN ADDITION TO ALL RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CONVEYED BY SUCH CONSUMER PROTECTION LAWS AND REGULATIONS. THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT EXCLUDE, LIMIT OR SUSPEND ANY RIGHTS OF CONSUMERS ARISING OUT OF NONCONFORMITY WITH A SALES CONTRACT. SOME COUNTRIES, STATES AND PROVINCES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY OR CONDITION MAY LAST, SO THE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS DESCRIBED BELOW MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS, AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY BY COUNTRY, STATE OR PROVINCE. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE COUNTRY IN WHICH THE PRODUCT PURCHASE TOOK PLACE. APPLE, THE WARRANTOR UNDER THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, IS IDENTIFIED AT THE END OF THIS DOCUMENT ACCORDING TO THE COUNTRY OR REGION IN WHICH THE PRODUCT PURCHASE TOOK PLACE.

Apple's warranty obligations for this hardware product are limited to the terms set forth below:

Apple, as defined in the table below, warrants this Apple-branded hardware product against defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of ONE (1) YEAR from the date of retail purchase by the original end-user purchaser ("Warranty Period"). If a hardware defect arises and a valid claim is received within the Warranty Period, at its option and to the extent permitted by law, Apple will either (1) repair the hardware defect at no charge, using new parts or parts equivalent to new in performance and reliability, (2) exchange the product with a product that is new or equivalent to new in performance and reliability and is at least functionally equivalent to the original product, or (3) refund the purchase price of the product. Apple may request that you replace defective parts with new or refurbished user-installable parts that Apple provides in fulfillment of its warranty obligation. A replacement product or part, including a user-installable part that has been installed in accordance with instructions provided by Apple, assumes the remaining warranty of the original product or ninety (90) days from the date of replacement or repair, whichever provides longer coverage for you. When a product or part is exchanged, any replacement item becomes your property and the replaced item becomes Apple's property. Parts provided by Apple in fulfillment of its warranty obligation must be used in products for which warranty service is claimed. When a refund is given, the product for which the refund is provided must be returned to Apple and becomes Apple's property.

**EXCLUSIONS AND LIMITATIONS** This Limited Warranty applies only to the hardware product manufactured by or for Apple that can be identified by the "Apple" trademark, trade name, or logo affixed to it. The Limited Warranty does not apply to any non-Apple hardware product or any software, even if packaged or sold with the Apple hardware. Manufacturers, suppliers, or publishers, other than Apple, may provide their own warranties to the

end user purchaser, but Apple, in so far as permitted by law, provides their products "as is." Software distributed by Apple with or without the Apple brand name (including, but not limited to system software) is not covered under this Limited Warranty. Refer to the licensing agreement accompanying the software for details of your rights with respect to its use.

Apple does not warrant that the operation of the product will be uninterrupted or error-free. Apple is not responsible for damage arising from failure to follow instructions relating to the product's use.

**This warranty does not apply:** (a) to consumable parts, such as batteries, unless damage has occurred due to a defect in materials or workmanship; (b) to cosmetic damage, including but not limited to scratches, dents, and broken plastic on ports; (c) to damage caused by use with non-Apple products; (d) to damage caused by accident, abuse, misuse, liquid spill or submersion, flood, fire, earthquake or other external causes; (e) to damage caused by operating the product outside the permitted or intended uses described by Apple; (f) to damage caused by service (including upgrades and expansions) performed by anyone who is not a representative of Apple or an Apple authorized wireless service provider); (g) to a product or part that has been modified to alter functionality or capability without the written permission of Apple; or (h) if any Apple serial number has been removed or defaced.

**Important:** Do not open the hardware product. Opening the hardware product may cause damage that is not covered by this warranty. Only Apple or an authorized service provider should perform service on this hardware product.

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THIS WARRANTY AND THE REMEDIES SET FORTH ABOVE ARE EXCLUSIVE AND IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, REMEDIES AND CONDITIONS, WHETHER ORAL, WRITTEN, STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. AS PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, APPLE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL STATUTORY OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND WARRANTIES AGAINST HIDDEN OR LATENT DEFECTS. IF APPLE CANNOT LAWFULLY DISCLAIM STATUTORY OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES THEN TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ALL SUCH WARRANTIES SHALL BE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY AND TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT SERVICE AS DETERMINED BY APPLE IN ITS SOLE DISCRETION. No Apple reseller, agent, or employee is authorized to make any modification, extension, or addition to this warranty. If any term is held to be illegal or unenforceable, the legality or enforceability of the remaining terms shall not be affected or impaired.

EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS WARRANTY AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, APPLE IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONDITION, OR UNDER ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF USE; LOSS OF REVENUE; LOSS OF ACTUAL OR ANTICIPATED PROFITS (INCLUDING LOSS OF PROFITS ON CONTRACTS); LOSS OF THE USE OF MONEY; LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS; LOSS OF BUSINESS; LOSS OF OPPORTUNITY; LOSS OF GOODWILL; LOSS OF REPUTATION; LOSS OF, DAMAGE TO OR CORRUPTION OF DATA; OR ANY

INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS OR DAMAGE HOWSOEVER CAUSED INCLUDING THE REPLACEMENT OF EQUIPMENT AND PROPERTY, ANY COSTS OF RECOVERING, PROGRAMMING OR REPRODUCING ANY PROGRAM OR DATA STORED IN OR USED WITH THE APPLE PRODUCT AND ANY FAILURE TO MAINTAIN THE CONFIDENTIALITY OF DATA STORED ON THE PRODUCT. THE FOREGOING LIMITATION SHALL NOT APPLY TO DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY CLAIMS, OR ANY STATUTORY LIABILITY FOR INTENTIONAL AND GROSS NEGLIGENT ACTS AND/OR OMISSIONS. APPLE DISCLAIMS ANY REPRESENTATION THAT IT WILL BE ABLE TO REPAIR ANY PRODUCT UNDER THIS WARRANTY OR MAKE A PRODUCT EXCHANGE WITHOUT RISK TO OR LOSS OF PROGRAMS OR DATA.

**OBTAINING WARRANTY SERVICE** Please access and review the online help resources referred to in the documentation accompanying this hardware product before seeking warranty service. If the product is still not functioning properly after making use of these resources, please contact the Apple representatives or, if applicable, an Apple owned retail store ("Apple Retail") or Apple authorized wireless service provider located using the information provided in the documentation. When contacting Apple via telephone, other charges may apply depending on your location. When calling, an Apple representative or Apple authorized wireless service provider will help determine whether your product requires service and, if it does, will inform you how Apple will provide it. You must assist in diagnosing issues with your product and follow Apple's warranty processes.

Apple may restrict service to the country where Apple or its authorized distributors originally sold the hardware product and provide warranty service (i) at an Apple Retail or Apple authorized wireless service provider location, where service is performed at the location, or the Apple Retail or Apple authorized wireless service provider may send the product to an Apple repair service location for service, (ii) by sending you prepaid way bills (and if you no longer have the original packaging, Apple may send you packaging material) to enable you to ship the product to Apple's repair service location for service, or (iii) by sending you new or refurbished customer-installable replacement product or parts to enable you to service or exchange your own product ("DIY Service"). Upon receipt of the replacement product or part, the original product or part becomes the property of Apple and you agree to follow instructions, including, if required, arranging the return of original product or part to Apple in a timely manner. When providing DIY Service requiring the return of the original product or part, Apple may require a credit card authorization as security for the retail price of the replacement product or part and applicable shipping costs. If you follow instructions, Apple will cancel the credit card authorization, so you will not be charged for the product or part and shipping costs. If you fail to return the replaced product or part as instructed, Apple will charge the credit card for the authorized amount.

Service options, parts availability and response times may vary according to the country in which service is requested. Service options are subject to change at any time. You may be responsible for shipping and handling charges if the product cannot be serviced in the country in which service is requested. If you seek service in a country that is not the country of original purchase, you will comply with all applicable export laws and regulations

and be responsible for all custom duties, V.A.T. and other associated taxes and charges. Where international service is available, Apple may repair or exchange defective products and parts with comparable products and parts that comply with local standards. In accordance with applicable law, Apple may require that you furnish proof of purchase details and/or comply with registration requirements before receiving warranty service. Please refer to the accompanying documentation for more details on this and other matters on obtaining warranty service.

Apple will maintain and use customer information in accordance with the Apple Customer Privacy Policy available at the webpage listed in the table below.

If your product is capable of storing software programs, data and other information, you should protect its contents against possible operational failures. Before you deliver your product for warranty service it is your responsibility to keep a separate backup copy of the contents and disable any security passwords. **THE CONTENTS OF YOUR PRODUCT WILL BE DELETED AND THE STORAGE MEDIA REFORMATTED IN THE COURSE OF WARRANTY SERVICE.** Your product or a replacement product will be returned to you as your product was configured when originally purchased, subject to applicable updates. Apple may install system software updates as part of warranty service that will prevent the hardware from reverting to an earlier version of the system software. Third party applications installed on the hardware may not be compatible or work with the hardware as a result of the system software update. You will be responsible for reinstalling all other software programs, data and passwords. Recovery and reinstallation of software programs and user data are not covered under this Limited Warranty.

A list of authorized wireless service providers is available online at: <http://images.apple.com/legal/warranty/docs/iPhoneAuthorizedDistributors.pdf>  
Complimentary support may be available. See: <http://www.apple.com/support/country/index.html?dest=complimentary>

## Warranty Obligor for Region or Country of Purchase

Region/ Country of Purchase	Apple	Address
<b>Americas</b>		
<b>Brazil</b>	Apple Computer Brasil Ltda	Av. Cidade Jardim 400, 2 Andar, Sao Paulo, SP Brasil 01454-901
<b>Canada</b>	Apple Canada Inc.	7495 Birchmount Rd.; Markham, Ontario, Canada; L3R 5G2 Canada
<b>Mexico</b>	Apple Operations Mexico, S.A. de C.V.	Av. Paseo de la Reforma 505, Piso 33, Colonia Cuauhtemoc, Mexico DF 06500
<b>United States and Other Americas Countries</b>	Apple Inc.	1 Infinite Loop; Cupertino, CA 95014, U.S.A.

Region/ Country of Purchase	Apple	Address
<b>Europe, Middle East and Africa</b>		
All countries	Apple Sales International	Hollyhill Industrial Estate Hollyhill, Cork, Republic of Ireland
<b>Asia Pacific</b>		
Australia; New Zealand; Fiji, Papua New Guinea; Vanuatu	Apple Pty. Limited.	PO Box A2629, South Sydney, NSW 1235, Australia
Hong Kong	Apple Asia Limited	2401 Tower One, Times Square, Causeway; Hong Kong
India	Apple India Private Ltd.	19th Floor, Concorde Tower C, UB City No 24, Vittal Mallya Road, Bangalore 560-001, India
Japan	Apple Japan Inc.	3-20-2 Nishishinjuku, Shinjuku-ku, Tokyo, Japan
Korea	Apple Computer Korea Ltd.	3201, ASEM Tower; 159, Samsung-dong, Kangnam-gu; Seoul 135-090, Korea
Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, Brunei, Cambodia, Guam, Indonesia, Laos, Singapore, Malaysia, Nepal, Pakistan, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Vietnam	Apple South Asia Pte. Ltd.	7 Ang Mo Kio Street 64 Singapore, 569086
People's Republic of China	Apple Computer Trading (Shanghai) Co. Ltd.	B Area, 2/F, No. 6 Warehouse Building, No. 500 Bing Ke Road, Wai Gao Qiao Free Trade Zone, Shanghai, P.R.C.
Thailand	Apple South Asia (Thailand) Limited	25th Floor, Suite B2, Siam Tower, 989 Rama 1 Road, Pataumwan, Bangkok, 10330
Taiwan	Apple Asia LLC	16A, No. 333 Tun Hwa S. Road. Sec. 2, Taipei, Taiwan 106
Other Asian Pacific Countries	Apple Inc.	1 Infinite Loop; Cupertino, CA 95014, U.S.A.

#### Privacy Policy

All countries <http://www.apple.com/legal/warranty/privacy>

iPhone US Warranty v1.8

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

© 2009 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc. iTunes Store is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc. The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple Inc. is under license.

034-5216-A

Printed in XXXX



C O M M O N P H O N E

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## **Health and Safety and Warranty Guide**

**Please read this manual before operating your device and keep it for future reference.**

---

**Warning!** This product contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive toxicity. For more information, please call 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864).

---

©2015 Samsung Electronics America, Inc. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?

For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:

[www.samsung.com/us/support](http://www.samsung.com/us/support)

Exempted from TIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
Case: 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

HSW Common Phone Guide\_English\_PS\_040115



# **Samsung Electronics America (SEA), Inc**

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

Address:  
85 Challenger Road  
Ridgefield Park,  
New Jersey 07660

Phone:  
1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)

Internet Address:  
[www.samsung.com](http://www.samsung.com)

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Section 1: Health and Safety Information</b> .....	<b>2</b>	Operating Environment .....	32
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals .....	2	Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device .....	36
FCC Part 15 Information to User .....	12	FCC Notice and Cautions .....	36
Smart Practices While Driving .....	14	Other Important Safety Information . . .	37
Battery Use and Safety .....	16	<b>Section 2: Warranty Information</b> ...	<b>40</b>
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling .....	20	Standard Limited Warranty .....	40
UL Certified Travel Charger .....	23	<b>Index</b> .....	<b>50</b>
Display / Touch-Screen .....	24		
Care and Maintenance .....	25		
Responsible Listening .....	27		

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Section 1: Health and Safety Information

---

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your phone. The terms “mobile device” or “cell phone” are used in this section to refer to your phone. **Read this information before using your mobile device.**

### Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

#### ***Do cell phones pose a health hazard?***

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

### **Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?**

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

## **Interphone Study**

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls.

Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than 1/2 hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at

[www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200\\_E.pdf](http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf)

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

### **International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)**

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at

[www.ukcosmos.org/index.html](http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html).

### **Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)**

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at

[www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en\\_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39](http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39).



## **Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute**

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at <http://seer.cancer.gov/>.

## **Cell Phone Industry Actions**

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.



The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

### **Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories**

#### **Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy**

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

#### **Hands-Free Kits**

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body. Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

### **Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation**

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone. Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hands-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

## **Children and Cell Phones**

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone.
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 12/31/2014):

Health and Safety Information 10

Filed in CTIA—the Wireless Industry's Association v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

- FCC RF Safety Program:  
[www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/radio-frequency-safety](http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/radio-frequency-safety)
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):  
[www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html](http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html)
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):  
[www.osha.gov/SLIC/radiofrequencyradiation/](http://www.osha.gov/SLIC/radiofrequencyradiation/)  
(Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH):  
[www.cdc.gov/niosh/](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/)
- World Health Organization (WHO):  
[www.who.int/peh-emf/en/](http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/)
- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection:  
[www.icnirp.de](http://www.icnirp.de)

cited in *CTA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley*  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

- Health Protection Agency:  
[www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/](http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/)
- US Food and Drug Administration:  
[www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/  
HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm](http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm)

*cited in CTA-the Wireless Assn v. Com of Berkeley  
Case 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## **FCC Part 15 Information to User**

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device. This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## Smart Practices While Driving

### On the Road - Off the Phone

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or talking on a mobile phone - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. **Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired.** Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

**Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.**

Before answering calls, consider your circumstances. Let the call go to voicemail when driving conditions require. Remember, driving comes first, not the call!



If you consider a call necessary and appropriate, follow these tips:

- Use a hands-free device;
- Secure your phone within easy reach;
- Place calls when you are not moving;
- Plan calls when your car will be stationary;
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
- Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are driving and will suspend the call if necessary;
- Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 16, 2017*



Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

**Never use wireless data services such as text messaging, Web browsing, or e-mail while operating a vehicle.**

**Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.**

For more information, go to [www.ctia.org](http://www.ctia.org).

## **Battery Use and Safety**

---

**Important! Handle and store batteries properly to avoid injury or damage.** Most battery issues arise from improper handling of batteries and, particularly, from the continued use of damaged batteries.

---

- **Do not disassemble, crush, puncture, shred, or otherwise attempt to change the form of your battery.** Do not put a high degree of pressure on the battery. This can cause leakage or an internal short-circuit, resulting in overheating.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

- **Do not let the phone or battery come in contact with liquids.** Liquids can get into the phone's circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the phone appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the phone and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.
- **Do not place your battery in or near a heat source.** Excessive heating can damage the phone or the battery and could cause the phone or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your phone in your car in high temperatures.

Case: 16-15141, 04/21/2017, ID: 10405452, DktEntry: 92-2, Page 48 of 296  
Filed by CTFA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

- **Caution: Some applications or prolonged usage may increase device temperature.** Prolonged skin contact with a device that is hot to the touch may produce skin discomfort or redness, or low-temperature burns. If the device feels hot to the touch, discontinue use and close all applications or turn off the device until it cools. Always ensure that the device has adequate ventilation and air flow. Covering the device with bedding, your body, thick clothing or any other materials that significantly affect air flow may affect the performance of the device and poses a possible risk of fire or explosion, which could lead to serious bodily injuries or damage to property.
- **Do not dispose of the phone or the battery in a fire.** The phone or the battery may explode when overheated.
- **Do not handle a damaged or leaking battery.** Do not let leaking battery fluid come in contact with your eyes, skin or clothing. For safe disposal options, contact your nearest Samsung-authorized service center.
- **Avoid dropping the cell phone.** Dropping the phone or the battery, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the phone and battery. If you suspect damage to the phone or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- **Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.**

- **Do not allow the battery to touch metal objects.** Accidental short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object (coin, key, jewelry, clip, or pen) causes a direct connection between the + and - terminals of the battery (metal strips on the battery), for example when you carry a spare battery in a pocket or bag. Short-circuiting the terminals may damage the battery or the object causing the short-circuiting.

---

**Important!** Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your phone.

---

**WARNING!**

**Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard.** Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the phone caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
Case No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

- **Do not use incompatible cell phone batteries and chargers.** Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers. Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.
- **Misuse or use of incompatible phones, batteries, and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard.**

## **Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling**

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment.

Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

Health and Safety Information 20

---

**Note:** Dispose of unwanted electronics through an approved recycler.

---

We've made it easy for you to recycle your old Samsung mobile device by working with respected take-back companies in every state in the country.

**Drop It Off**

You can drop off your Samsung-branded mobile device and batteries for recycling at one of our numerous Samsung Recycling Direct (SR) locations.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to:

[www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect](http://www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect) or call 1-877-278-0799.

Samsung-branded devices and batteries will be accepted at these locations for no fee.

**Mail It In**

The Samsung Mobile Take-Back Program will provide Samsung customers with a free recycling mailing label.

*cited in N.T.I.A-the Wireless Agency City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

For more information about recycling your device, go to: <https://pages.samsung.com/recycling/index.jsp> or call 1-800-822-8837 and follow the instructions to print out a free pre-paid postage label and then send your old mobile device or battery to the address listed, via U.S. Mail, for recycling.

Consumers may also recycle their used mobile device or batteries at many retail or carrier-provided locations where mobile devices and batteries are sold. Additional information regarding specific locations may be found at [www.epa.gov/epawaste/conservation/materials/ecoaction/donate.htm](http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/conservation/materials/ecoaction/donate.htm) or at [www.call2recycle.org/](http://www.call2recycle.org/).

**Follow local regulations regarding disposal of mobile devices and batteries**

Dispose of your mobile device and batteries in accordance with local regulations. In some areas, the disposal of these items in household or business trash may be prohibited. Help us protect the environment - recycle!

---

**Warning!** Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

---

Filed in Case Western Reserve Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 Archived on April 17, 2017

## **UL Certified Travel Charger**

The Travel Charger for this phone has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

**FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.**

**IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

**DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

*Disclosed in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
Case No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## Display / Touch-Screen

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

### **WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY**

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

### **WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE**

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the "Standard Limited Warranty".

*cited in C.T.A. the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Care and Maintenance

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

### Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from

#### Liquids of any kind

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits. If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion.

Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

#### Extreme heat or cold

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

## **Microwaves**

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

## **Dust and dirt**

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

## **Cleaning solutions**

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution. If the mobile device has a retractable camera lens, do not use soap and water to clean the lens. Use a blower or brush or lens cleaning paper dampened in a lens cleaning solution.

## **Shock or vibration**

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

## **Paint**

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

cited in *OTIA-the Wireless Agency v. City of Berkeley*  
No. 16-15141 entered on April 17, 2017

## **Responsible Listening**

---

### **Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.**

---

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations. Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss.

This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices). Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.
- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before you hearing could be affected.

CTIA - The Wireless Alliance  
City of Berkeley  
Case 16-15141  
Archived on April 17, 2017

- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss. Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

**American Academy of Audiology**

11480 Commerce Park Drive, Suite 220  
Reston, VA 20190  
Voice: (800) 222-2336 or 703-790-8466

Email: [infoaud@audiology.org](mailto:infoaud@audiology.org)

Internet:

[www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx](http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx)

Case 16-15141 Document 92-2 Filed 04/21/17 Page 60 of 296  
cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

**National Institute on Deafness and Other  
Communication Disorders**

National Institutes of Health  
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320  
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320

Email: [nidcdinfo@nidcd.nih.gov](mailto:nidcdinfo@nidcd.nih.gov)

Internet:

[www.nidcd.nih.gov/](http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/)

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

**National Institute for Occupational Safety  
and Health (NIOSH)**

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200  
Patriots Plaza Building  
Washington, DC 20201

1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)  
Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328  
TTY: (888) 232-6348

Email: [cdcinfo@cdc.gov](mailto:cdcinfo@cdc.gov)

Internet:

[www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/  
default.html](http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/default.html)

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## **Operating Environment**

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

### **Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices**

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

### **Implantable Medical Devices**

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

Health and Safety Information 32

*cited in CT A-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
16-15141 archived on Apr 17, 2017*

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see:

[www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#](http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#).

*Case 1:17-cv-01001-CTB Document 1-1 Filed 04/21/17 Page 64 of 106  
Cited in CTB v. the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 Archived on April 17, 2017*

**Other Medical Devices**

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

**Vehicles**

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

**Posted Facilities**

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Filed in CA-A-the Wirelss Assn v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

### **Potentially Explosive Environments**

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

CTIA - The Wireless Assn of America  
No. 16-15141-17  
Filed on April 17, 2017  
City of Berkeley

**When your Device is Wet**

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

**Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device**

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or make calls that increase your mobile device bill. Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

**FCC Notice and Cautions**

**FCC Notice**

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated.

*Case 16-15141, Doc. 6-1, Filed 04/21/17, Page 67 of 296  
Cited to CIPA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## **Cautions**

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved by Samsung could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device. Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

## **Other Important Safety Information**

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device or install the mobile device in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.

- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.

Filed in CT/A-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of cell phone services to the offender, or legal action, or both.
- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.
- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets.

[010115]

Case 1:16-cv-01141-Whaley-Askin v. City of Berkeley  
filed 04/17/17  
USDC SD CA



## Section 2: Warranty Information

---

### Standard Limited Warranty

#### What is covered and for how long?

The warranty period commences upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Device	1 Year
Battery(ies)*	1 Year
Other Accessories*	1 Year

\*If applicable.

#### What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of the Product.

*cited in CTIA v. Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG including but not limited to installation of unauthorized software and unauthorized root access, both of which shall void this limited warranty; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity

falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG device for which it is specified.

**What are SAMSUNG's obligations?**

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, at SAMSUNG's sole option, without charge. SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace the Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product.

Repaired/replaced cases, pouches and holsters will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced

Filed on CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 24, 2017

Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. Except to any extent expressly allowed by applicable law, transfer or assignment of this Limited Warranty is prohibited.

**What must you do to obtain warranty service?**

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, you must return the Product to an authorized phone service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-888-987-4357. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, you must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product.

You should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

cited in *CTA v. Wireless*, No. 16-15141, archived on April 11, 2017, v. City of Berkeley

**What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?**

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS.

ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Filed by CILA the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE USER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

Filed in CA in the Wireless Area of the Court of Appeals  
 No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



**What is the procedure for resolving disputes?**

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY.

Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

Case: 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017  
City of Berkeley  
No. 8-141-1  
City of Berkeley  
No. 8-141-1

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are \$5,000.00 or less (“Small Claim”), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or \$50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed \$5,000.00 (“Large Claim”) shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator’s award in any court of competent jurisdiction.

This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG’s employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product’s sale, condition or performance.

**You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser’s purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to [optout@sta.samsung.com](mailto:optout@sta.samsung.com), with the subject line: “Arbitration Opt Out.”** You



must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

**Severability**

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

Filed in CIA The Writtle Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
 No. 16-15141 Archived on April 17, 2017

### **Precautions for Transfer and Disposal**

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the **Samsung Customer Care Center** for details.

---

**Important!** Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

---

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [010115]

*cited in CTA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Index

---

**B**  
Battery Use & Safety 16

**C**  
Care and Maintenance 25  
Children and Cell Phones 10

**D**  
Display / Touch-Screen 24  
Do cell phones pose a health hazard? 2

**E**  
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 2

**F**  
FCC Notice and Cautions 36

**H**  
Health and Safety Information 2

**O**  
Operating Environment 32  
Other Important Safety Information 37

**R**  
Reducing Exposure  
Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories 8

**R**  
Responsible Listening 27  
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile device 36

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

**S**

**Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling 20**

**Smart Practices While Driving 14**

**Standard Limited Warranty 40**

**U**

**UL Certified Travel Charger 23**

**W**

**Warranty Information 40**

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



Browse by  
CATEGORY

Browse by  
BUREAUS &  
OFFICES

 Search

About the FCC



Proceedings & Actions



Licensing & Databases



Reports & Research



News & Events



For Consumers



*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

Home / Engineering & Technology / Laboratory Division / Equipment Authorization Approval Guide /

# FCC ID Search

## Equipment Authorization Approval Guide

Approval Procedures

Measurement Procedures

Grantee Code

Importation

Knowledge Database



### FCC ID Search Form

Help    Advanced Search

Grantee Code: (First three or five characters of FCCID)

- FCC ID Search
- Equipment Authorization System
- Testing Laboratory Search
- Telecommunications Certification Body Search
- Mutual Recognition Agreements
- RF Device
- FCC Rules (Title 47)

Product Code: (Remaining characters of FCCID)

search

### Advanced Search

To perform an advanced search go to:

<https://apps.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm>. The advanced search permits search on a wide range of fields associated with an FCC ID to help find the information on a grant of certification.

### FCC ID Search Instructions

- FCC ID numbers consists of two elements, a grantee code and an equipment product code. An FCC ID is assigned to all devices subject to certification.
- The Grantee Code, the first portion of the FCC ID, is either a three or five character alphanumeric string representing the Grantee/Applicant.
  - Grantee codes that begin with an alphabetic character (A-Z) of three characters in length. The second and third characters may be numbers or alphabetic characters.
  - Grantee codes that begin with a number (2-9) are five characters in length. The second through fifth characters may be numbers or alphabetic characters.
  - The Grantee Code does not contain the numbers "one" and/or "zero". The Grantee Code is assigned by the Commission permanently to a company for authorization of all radio frequency equipment.
- The Product Code is the second portion of the FCC ID that begins after the grantee code. The Product Code may include hyphens and/or dashes (-). The Product Code is assigned by the Grantee.
- More examples and some additional explanation is available on the [FCCID help section](#).

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 received on April 17, 2017

**Bureau/Office:**

[Engineering & Technology](#)

**Tags:**

[Devices - Devices, Engineering & Technology - Digital device - Radio frequency \(RF\) device](#)

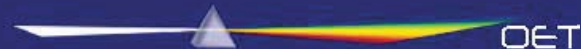
Federal Communications Commission  
445 12th Street SW, Washington, DC 20554  
Phone: 1-888-225-5322  
TTY: 1-888-835-5322  
ASL Videophone: 1-844-432-2275  
Fax: 1-866-418-0232



Contact Us



*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



Office of Engineering and Technology

FCC > FCC E-filing > EAS > Search

FCC Site Map

OET Home Page

Filing Options

- [Grantee Registration](#)
- [Modify Grantee Information](#)
- [Submit Correspondence](#)
- [Renew Test Firm/Add Exhibits](#)
- [Test Firm Accrediting Body Login](#)
- [Return to 159 Form](#)
- [Add/Modify Grant Deferral Date](#)
- [Change Short-Term Confidential Date](#)

Reports

- [Pending Application Status](#)
- [Authorization Search](#)
- [Grantee Search](#)
- [Pending Grantee Search](#)
- [TCB Search](#)
- [Test Firms](#)
- [Test Firm Accrediting Bodies](#)
- [Equipment Class/Rule Part List](#)

Miscellaneous

- [Get FRN](#)
- [Knowledge Database](#)
- [Hearing Aid Compatibility Status Reporting](#)
- [Measurement Procedures](#)

16 results were found that match the search criteria:

Grantee Code: ZNF Product Code: L15G

Displaying records 1 through 16 of 16.

View Form	Display Exhibits	Display Grant	Display Correspondence	Applicant Name	Address	City	State	Country	Zip Code	FCC ID	Application Purpose	Final Action Date	Lower Frequency In MHz	Upper Frequency In MHz
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	2402.0	2480.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	2402.0	2480.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	2412.0	2462.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	2402.0	2480.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	2402.0	2480.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	2412.0	2462.0
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015		
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	824.2	848.8
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	826.4	846.6
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	1850.2	1909.8
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015	1852.4	1907.6
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	824.2	848.8
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	826.4	846.6
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	1850.2	1909.8
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Class II Permissive Change	01/28/2015	1852.4	1907.6
	<a href="#">Detail Summary</a>			LG Electronics USA, Inc.	1000 MobileComm Ave.	Sylvan Cliffs	Englewood NJ	United States	07632	ZNFL15G	Original Equipment	01/07/2015		

*Not cited in CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-13717 archived on April 17, 2017*

[Perform Search Again](#)

Please use the Submit Inquiry link at [www.fcc.gov/labhelp](http://www.fcc.gov/labhelp) to send any comments or suggestions for this site



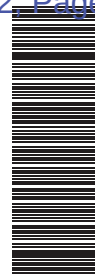
445 12th Street, SW  
Washington, DC 20554  
[More FCC Contact Information...](#)

TTY: 888-TELL-FCC (835-5322)  
Fax: 202-418-0232  
E-mail: [fccinfo@fcc.gov](mailto:fccinfo@fcc.gov)

- [Web Policies & Notices](#)  
- [Customer Service Standards](#)  
- [Freedom of Information Act](#)

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

ENGLISH



www.lg.com



User Guide

LG SUNRISE™

MFL68803801 (1.1)

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

Printed in China



LG SUNRISE™

Guía del usuario



ESPAÑOL

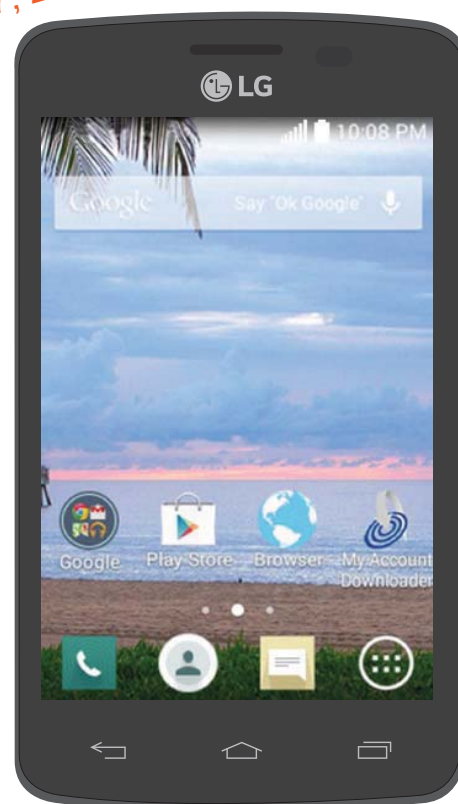
www.lg.com



ENGLISH

# User Guide

- Screen displays and illustrations may differ from those you see on actual phone.
- Some of the contents of this guide may not apply to your phone, depending on the software and your service provider. All information in this document is subject to change without notice.
- This handset is not suitable for people who have a visual impairment due to the touch screen keyboard.
- Copyright ©2015 LG Electronics, Inc. All rights reserved. LG and the LG logo are registered trademarks of LG Group and its related entities. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
- Google™, Google Maps™, Gmail™, YouTube™, Hangouts™ and Google Play™ are trademarks of Google, Inc.



# Table of contents

<b>Important notice</b> .....	<b>5</b>	<b>Connecting to Networks and Devices</b> .....	<b>29</b>
<b>Getting to know your phone</b> .....	<b>11</b>	Wi-Fi .....	29
Phone overview .....	11	Connecting to Wi-Fi networks .....	29
Installing the battery .....	14	Turning Wi-Fi on and connecting to a Wi-Fi network.....	29
Charging the phone .....	16	Bluetooth.....	30
Using the memory card.....	17	Connecting to Virtual Private Networks.....	32
Locking and unlocking the screen....	18	PC connections with a USB cable.....	33
<b>Your Home screen</b> .....	<b>19</b>	<b>Calls</b> .....	<b>35</b>
Touch screen tips .....	19	Making a call.....	35
Home screen .....	20	Calling your contacts .....	35
Customizing the Home screen .....	21	Answering and rejecting a call .....	35
<b>Notifications</b> .....	<b>22</b>	Adjusting the in-call volume.....	36
Accessing notifications.....	22	Making a second call.....	36
Quick Settings.....	22	Viewing your call logs.....	37
Notification icons on the Status Bar .....	24	Call settings.....	37
<b>Entering text</b> .....	<b>26</b>	<b>Contacts</b> .....	<b>38</b>
Entering special characters .....	26	Searching for a contact.....	38
<b>Google account setup</b> .....	<b>27</b>	Adding a new contact .....	38
		Favorite contacts .....	39
		Creating a group.....	39

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141-12 archived at April 17, 2017*

**Messaging..... 40**

- Sending a message ..... 40
- View mode for the Messaging app... 41
- Changing your message settings ..... 41

**Email ..... 42**

- Managing an email account..... 42
- Working with account folders..... 43
- Composing and sending email ..... 43

**Camera and Video..... 44**

- Getting to know the viewfinder ..... 44
- Using the advanced settings ..... 45
- Taking a photo ..... 46
- Once you've taken a photo..... 46
- Viewing your saved photos and videos..... 48
- Recording a video ..... 48
- After recording a video..... 49
- Watching your saved videos ..... 49
- Adjusting the volume when viewing a video..... 49

**Unique LG Features..... 50**

- Guest Mode ..... 50
- Knock Code ..... 50
- KnockON ..... 51
- QuickMemo+..... 51

  - Using the QuickMemo+ options..... 53
  - QuickMemo+ Menu Options..... 53
  - To exit the QuickMemo+ feature..... 54
  - Viewing saved memos ..... 54

**Multimedia ..... 55**

- Gallery..... 55**

  - Viewing pictures ..... 55
  - Playing videos ..... 56
  - Editing photos..... 56
  - Deleting images..... 56
  - Setting a photo as the wallpaper..... 56

- Videos ..... 57**

  - Playing a video ..... 57

- Music ..... 58**

  - Playing a song..... 58

**Tools ..... 60**

- Setting your alarm ..... 60
- Using your calculator ..... 60
- Adding an event to your calendar..... 61
- Tasks..... 61
- Voice Recorder ..... 62

  - Recording a sound or voice ..... 62

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

# Table of contents

Polaris Office .....	62	<b>Phone software update .....</b>	<b>84</b>
Google+ .....	63	<b>Accessories.....</b>	<b>86</b>
Voice Search.....	63	<b>FAQ .....</b>	<b>87</b>
Downloads .....	63	<b>For your safety.....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Browsing the Web.....</b>	<b>64</b>		
Browser.....	64		
Using the Browser toolbar .....	64		
Viewing webpages.....	65		
Opening a page .....	65		
Searching the web by voice .....	65		
Bookmarks.....	65		
History .....	65		
<b>Chrome .....</b>	<b>66</b>		
Viewing webpages.....	66		
Opening a page .....	66		
Searching the web by voice .....	66		
Syncing with other devices .....	66		
Access bookmarks.....	67		
<b>Settings.....</b>	<b>68</b>		
Access the Settings menu .....	68		
Wireless Networks settings.....	68		
Device settings .....	70		
Personal settings .....	75		
System settings.....	79		

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Important notice



### Please read this before you start using your phone!

Please check to see whether any problems you encountered with your phone are described in this section before taking the phone in for service or calling a service representative.

## 1. Phone memory

When there is less than 10MB of space available in your phone memory, your phone cannot receive new messages. You need to check your phone memory and delete some data, such as applications or messages, to make more memory available.

### To uninstall applications:

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Apps**.
- 2 Once all applications appear, scroll to and select the application you want to uninstall.
- 3 Tap **Uninstall**, then tap **OK** to confirm.

## 2. Optimizing battery life



Extend your battery's life between charges by turning off features that you don't need to have running constantly in the background. You can monitor how applications and system resources consume battery power.

## Important notice

### Extending your phone's battery life:



- Turn off radio communications when you're not using. If you are not using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or Location, turn them off.
- Reduce screen brightness and set a shorter screen timeout.
- Turn off automatic syncing for Gmail, Calendar, Contacts and other applications.
- Some applications you have downloaded may reduce battery power.

### To check the battery power level:

- From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **About phone** > **Battery**.

The battery status (charging or discharging) and battery level (percentage charged) is displayed.

### To monitor and control how battery power is being used:

- From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **About phone** > **Battery** > **Battery use**.

Battery usage time is displayed on the screen. It tells you how long it has been since you last connected your phone to a power source or, if currently connected, how long the phone was last running on battery power. The screen shows the applications or services using battery power, listed in order from the greatest to smallest amount used.



### 3. Before installing an open source application and operating system (OS)



#### **WARNING**

If you install and use an OS other than the one provided by the manufacturer it may cause your phone to malfunction. In addition, your phone will no longer be covered by the warranty.

#### **WARNING**

To protect your phone and personal data, only download applications from trusted sources, such as Play Store. If there are improperly installed applications on your phone, the phone may not work normally or a serious error may occur. You must uninstall those applications and all associated data and settings from the phone.

### 4. Using a screen lock

Set a screen lock to secure your phone and prevent unauthorized use. From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Lock screen** > **Select screen lock** > **Knock Code, Pattern, PIN, or Password**. Some options will prompt you to create a Backup PIN as a safety measure in case you forget your screen lock.

**Caution:** Create a Google account before setting a screen lock and remember the Backup PIN you created when creating your screen lock.

## Important notice

### **WARNING**

#### **Precautions to take when using a screen lock.**

It is very important to remember the screen lock you set. You will not be able to access your phone if you use an incorrect screen lock 5 times. If you have used all 5 opportunities, you can try again after 30 seconds.

## 5. Using Hard Reset (Factory Reset)

If your phone needs to be restored to its original condition, use a Hard Reset to initialize your phone.

### **WARNING**

If you perform a Hard Reset, all user applications and user data will be deleted. Please remember to back up any important data before performing a Hard Reset.



- 1 Turn the phone off.
- 2 Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** + **Volume Down Key** at the same time.
- 3 Release only the **Power/Lock Key** when the LG logo is displayed, then immediately press and hold it again.
- 4 Release all of the keys when the Factory data reset screen is displayed.
- 5 Press the **Volume Down Key** to scroll to **Yes**, then press the **Power/Lock Key** to confirm.

- 6 Press the **Volume Down Key** to scroll to **Yes** once again, then press the **Power/Lock Key** to confirm.
- 7 Your phone performs a factory reset.

## 6. Opening and switching applications

Multi-tasking is easy with Android because you can keep more than one application running at the same time. There is no need to quit an application before opening another one. Use and switch between several open applications. Android manages each application, stopping and starting them as needed to ensure that idle applications don't consume resources unnecessarily.

### To stop applications:

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Apps** > **RUNNING** tab.
- 2 Tap the desired application and tap **Stop** to stop it.

## 7. Transferring music, photos and videos using Media device (MTP)

- 1 Connect the phone to your PC using the USB cable provided with your phone.
- 2 Drag the Status Bar down and tap the current USB connection.
- 3 Tap the **Media device (MTP)** option.
- 4 Select the **Open device to view files** option on your PC. You can then view media contents on your PC and transfer the files.
- 5 Copy the files from your PC to the drive folder or vice versa.

## Important notice

- 6 Drag the Status Bar down and tap **Media device (MTP) > Charge phone**.
- 7 Disconnect the USB cable from your phone.

## 8. Hold your phone upright

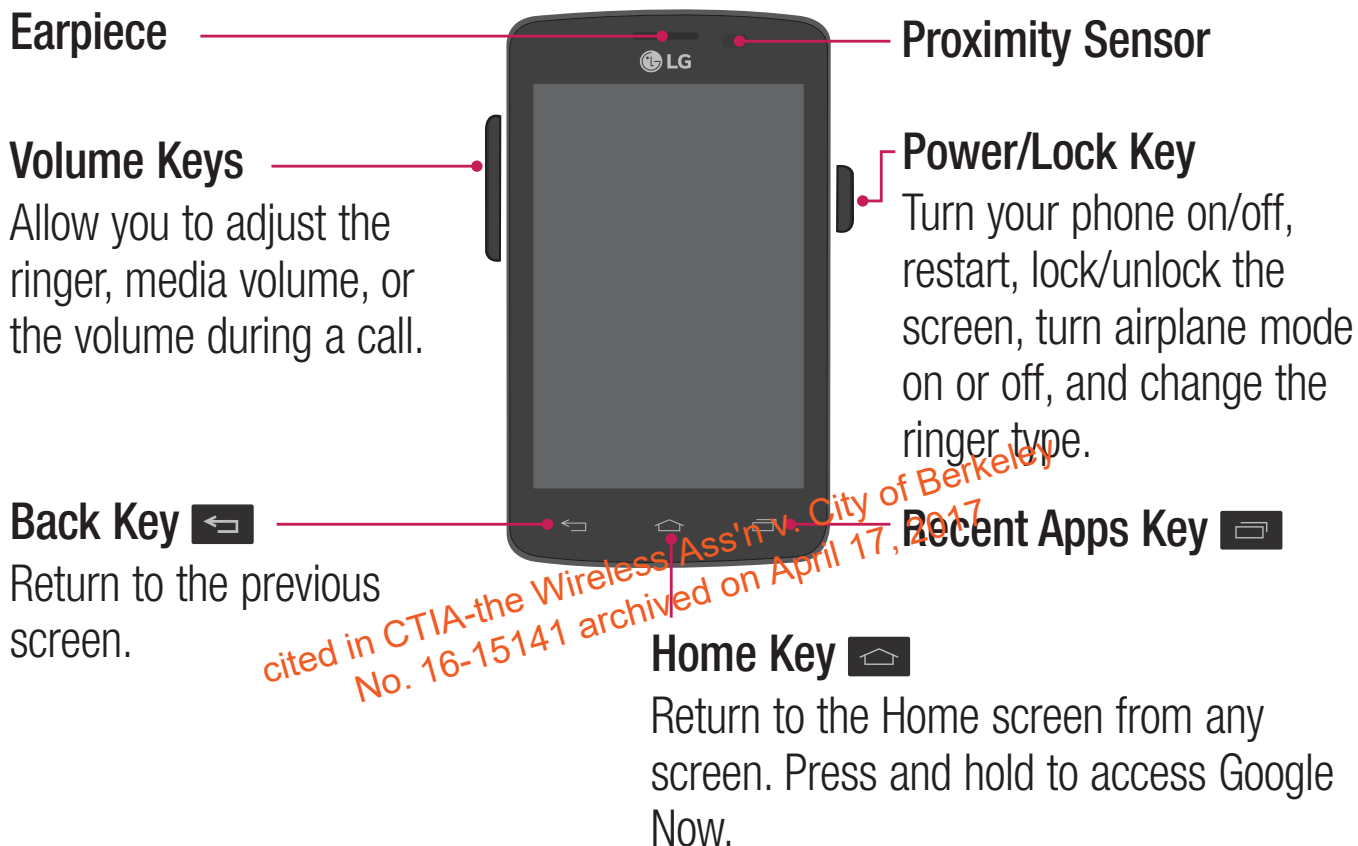
Hold your cell phone vertically, as you would a regular phone. Your phone has an internal antenna. Be careful not to scratch or damage the back of the phone, as this may affect performance.

When making/receiving calls or sending/receiving data, avoid holding the lower part of the phone where the antenna is located. Doing so may affect call quality.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Getting to know your phone

## Phone overview



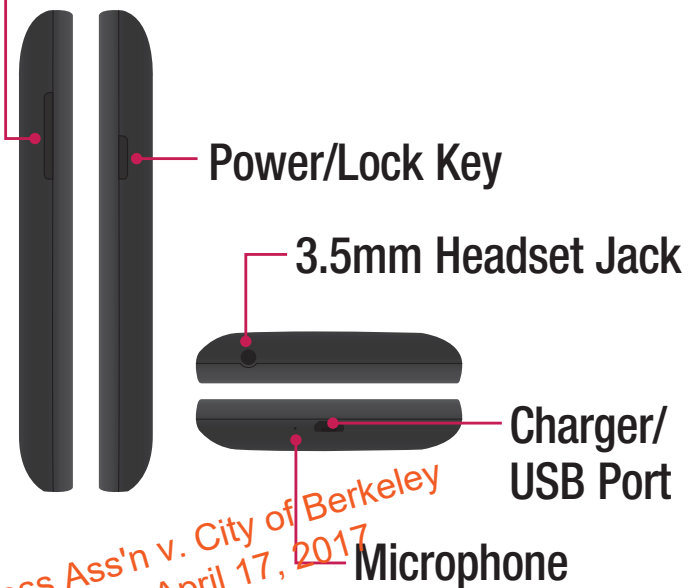
### **WARNING**

Placing a heavy object on the phone or sitting on it can damage the LCD and touchscreen functions. Covering the proximity sensor with a protective film could cause the sensor to malfunction.

# Getting to know your phone

## Volume Keys

- **On the Home screen:** Control ringer volume.
- **During a call:** Control your earpiece volume.
- **When playing audio/video:** Control volume continuously.



*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## Getting to know your phone

### Installing the battery

Before you can start using your new phone, you'll need to do a little setup, such as installing and charging the battery.

- 1 To remove the back cover, hold the phone firmly in one hand. With your other hand, place your thumbnail in the Charger/USB Port at the bottom of the phone as shown in the illustration below.

**NOTE:** Make sure to turn the phone off before removing the battery.



cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



- 2 Insert the battery into the battery compartment on the back on the phone. Make sure the connectors align **1** and press down until it clicks into place **2**.



- 3 Align the back cover over the battery compartment **1** and press down along the outer edges of back cover **2**.

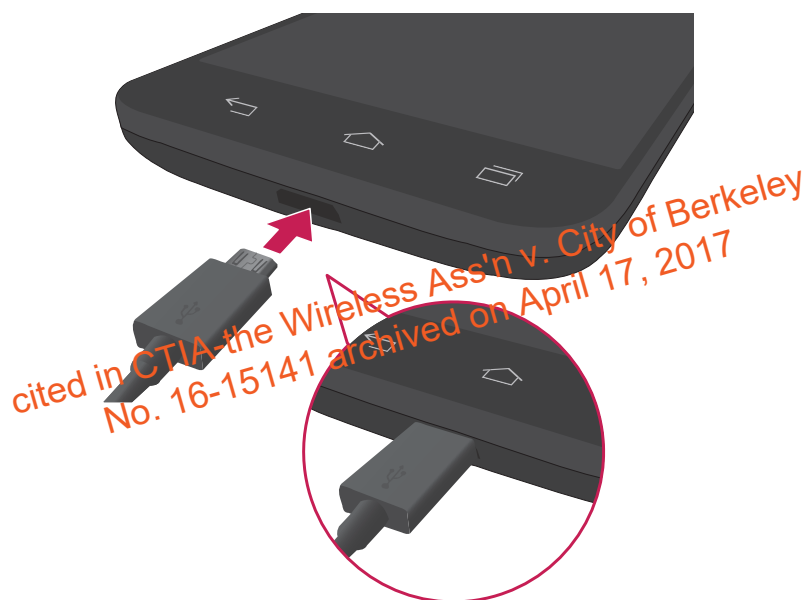


*Entered in CTW- the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141-1 received on April 17, 2017*

## Getting to know your phone

### Charging the phone

Your phone comes with a USB cable and a charging adapter. Fully charge the battery before using your phone for the first time to improve your battery lifetime. The USB/Charging Port is at the bottom of the phone. Insert one end of the USB cable into the port and plug the charging adapter into an electrical outlet.



#### **WARNING**

To avoid damage to your phone's USB/Charging Port and USB cable plug, orient the plug with the port before inserting it.

**NOTE:**

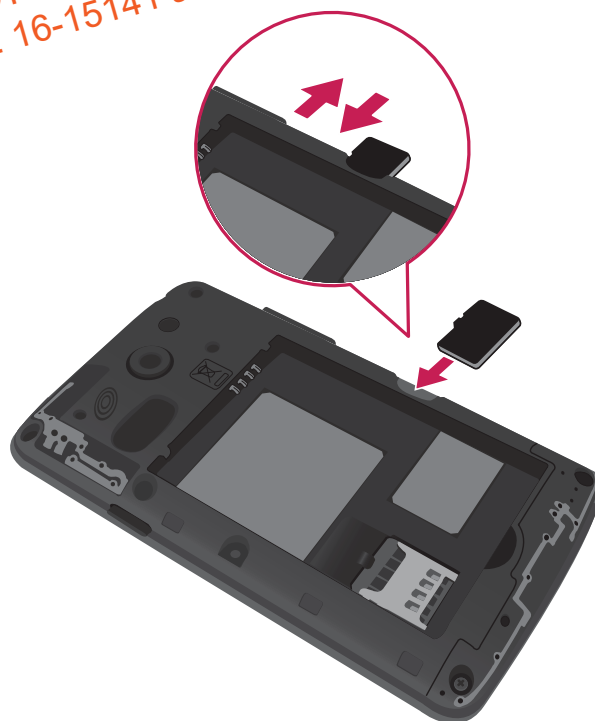
- Do not remove the back cover while your phone is charging.
- Only use an approved USB cable and charging adapter to charge your LG phone. Improper handling of the USB/Charging Port, as well as the use of an incompatible charger, may cause damage to your phone and void the warranty.

## Using the memory card

Make sure to unmount the SD card in the Storage menu before removing it.

- 1 Remove the back cover.
- 2 Insert the memory card into the slot. Make sure the gold contact area is facing downwards.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## Getting to know your phone

### Locking and unlocking the screen

If you do not use the phone for a while, the screen will be automatically turned off and locked. This helps to prevent accidental taps and saves battery power.

When you are not using your phone, press the **Power/Lock Key**  to lock your phone.

If there are any programs running when you lock your screen, they may be still running in Lock mode. It is recommended that you exit all programs before entering Lock mode to avoid unnecessary charges (e.g. phone calls, web access and data communications).

To wake up your phone, press the **Power/Lock Key** . The Lock screen will appear. Touch and slide the Lock screen in any direction to unlock the screen. The last screen you viewed will open.

*cited in CTIA the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Your Home screen

### Touch screen tips

Here are some tips on how to navigate on your phone.

**Touch or tap** – A single finger tap selects items, links, shortcuts and letters on the on-screen keyboard.

**Touch and hold** – Touch and hold an item on the screen by touching it and not lifting your finger until an action occurs. For example, to open a contact's available options, touch and hold the contact in the Contacts list until the context menu opens.

**Drag** – Touch and hold an item for a moment and then, without lifting your finger, move your finger on the screen until you reach the target position. You can drag items on the Home screen to reposition them.

**Swipe or slide** – To swipe or slide, quickly move your finger across the surface of the screen, without pausing when you first touch it (so you don't drag an item instead). For example, you can slide the screen up or down to scroll through a list or browse through the different Home screens by swiping from left to right (and vice versa).

**Double-tap** – Double-tap to zoom on a webpage or a map. For example, quickly double-tap a section of a webpage to adjust that section to fit the width of the screen. You can also double-tap to zoom in and out when viewing a picture and when using maps.

**Pinch-to-Zoom** – Use your index finger and thumb in a pinching or spreading motion to zoom in or out when using the browser, maps or when viewing pictures.

**Rotate the screen** – From many applications and menus, the orientation of the screen adjusts to the device's physical orientation.

## Your Home screen

### NOTE:

- To select an item, tap the center of the icon.
- Do not press too hard; the touch screen is sensitive enough to pick up a light, yet firm tap.
- Use the tip of your finger to tap the option you want. Be careful not to tap any other keys.

## Home screen

Simply swipe your finger to the left or right to view the Home screen panels. You can customize each panel with pre-loaded and downloaded apps, widgets, and wallpapers.

The Quick Keys are available at the bottom of the Home screen. Quick Keys provide easy and one-tap access to the functions you use the most.



Tap the **Phone** icon to bring up the dialpad to make a call.



Tap the **Contacts** icon to open your contacts.



Tap the **Messaging** icon to access the Messaging application, where you can view and create text and multimedia messages.



Tap the **Apps** icon to view all of your installed applications. To open any application, simply tap the icon in the applications list.

**NOTE:** To add an icon, drag it to the Quick Keys bar and release it. To remove an icon, drag it out of the Quick Keys bar.

## Customizing the Home screen

You can customize your Home screen by adding apps, downloads, widgets or wallpapers. For more convenience using your phone, add your favorite apps and widgets to the Home screen.

### To add items on your Home screen:

- 1 Touch and hold the empty part of the Home screen.
- 2 Tap the desired tab. Choose from **Apps** or **Widgets**.
- 3 Drag the desired app icon to the preferred location and lift your finger.

### To remove an item from the Home screen:

- Touch and hold the icon you want to remove, then drag it to  and release it.

**TIP!** To add an application icon to the Home screen from the Apps screen, touch and hold the application you want to add and drag it to the desired location.

### **TIP! Using folders**

You can combine several app icons in a folder to help keep you organized. Drop one app icon over another one on a Home screen and a folder will be created with both icons in it.

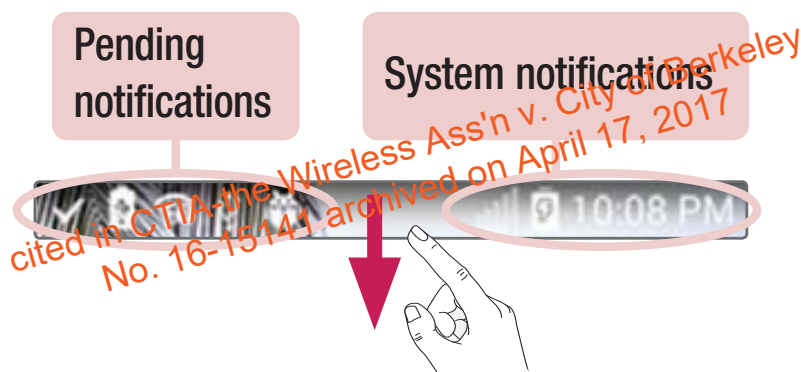
## Your Home screen

### Notifications

Notifications alert you to the arrival of new messages, calendar events, and alarms, as well as to ongoing events, such as video downloads.

From the Notifications Panel, you can view your phone's current status and pending notifications.

When a notification arrives, its icon appears at the top of the screen. Icons for pending notifications appear on the left and system icons, such as Wi-Fi or battery strength, on the right.



### Accessing notifications



Swipe the Status Bar downwards to open the Notifications Panel. To close the Notifications Panel, swipe the panel upwards or tap the **Back Key** .

### Quick Settings

Use the Quick Settings to easily toggle function settings like Wi-Fi, manage display brightness and more. To access the Quick Settings, open the Notifications Panel. The Quick Settings bar is located at the top of the Notifications Panel.



### To rearrange Quick Setting items on the Notification Panel

Swipe the Quick Settings bar to the left and tap **Edit** . Touch and hold  next to the items you want to move and drag it to the desired location. Tap the checkbox next to each item to add and remove them from the Quick Settings bar.

**NOTE:** Touch and hold an icon on the Quick Settings bar to directly access its settings menu.



## Your Home screen











### Notification icons on the Status Bar

Notification icons appear on the Status Bar at the top of the screen to report missed calls, new messages, calendar events, device status and more.



The icons listed in the table below are some of the most common ones.

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	No signal		Battery fully charged
	Airplane mode		Battery is charging
	Connected to a Wi-Fi network		Downloading data
	Wired headset (with mic) connected		Uploading data
	Wired headset (with no mic) connected		Call in progress
	Acquiring GPS		Data is syncing
	Missed call		New Gmail message

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Bluetooth is on		System warning
	New Hangouts message		Alarm is set
	New voicemail		New text or multimedia message
	Ringer is silenced		Song is playing
	Battery saver is on		Phone is connected to PC via USB cable








**NOTE:** The icon locations in the Status Bar may differ depending on the functions, features, and apps being used.

## Your Home screen

### Entering text

You can enter text using the on-screen keyboard. The on-screen keyboard appears automatically on the screen when you need to enter text. To manually display the keyboard, simply tap a text field where you want to enter text.

#### Using the keyboard and entering text

-  Tap once to capitalize the next letter you type. Double-tap for all caps (the arrow turns blue).
-   Tap to switch to the numbers and symbols keyboard.
-  Tap to access the LG Keyboard settings. Touch and hold to access voice input mode.
-  Tap to enter a space.
-  Tap to create a new line in the text field.
-  Tap to delete the previous character.

### Entering special characters




The LG Keyboard allows you to enter special characters (e.g. “á”) when entering text.

For example, to enter “á”, touch and hold the “a” key. When the pop-up with its additional characters is displayed, slide your finger over the “á”, then lift your finger to enter it.

## Google account setup

The first time you open a Google app on your phone, you'll be required to sign in with your existing Google Account. If you don't have a Google Account, you'll be prompted to create one.

### Creating your Google Account

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings** .
- 2 Tap **Accounts & sync** > **Add account** > **Google** > **New** to start the Google Account set up wizard.
- 3 Tap a text field to open the keyboard and enter your name and username for your Google Account. When entering text, you can move to the next text field by tapping **Next** on the keyboard.
- 4 When you have finished entering your name and username, tap the **Next** icon . Your phone then communicates with Google servers and checks for username availability.
- 5 Enter and re-enter your password. Then follow the instructions and enter the required and optional information about the account. Wait while the server creates your account.

created in CTIA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## Google account setup

### Signing in to your Google Account

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Accounts & sync** > **Add account** > **Google** > **Existing**.
- 2 Enter your email address and password, then tap the **Next** icon .
- 3 Once you've set up your Google Account on your phone, it'll automatically be synchronized with your Google Account on the web (depending on your synchronization settings).

After signing in, you can use Gmail and Play Store; back up your settings to Google servers; and take advantage of other Google services on your phone.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Connecting to Networks and Devices

## Wi-Fi

With Wi-Fi, you can use high-speed Internet access within the coverage of the wireless access point (AP). Enjoy wireless Internet using Wi-Fi, without extra charges.




### Connecting to Wi-Fi networks

To use Wi-Fi on your phone, you need to access a wireless access point or 'hotspot'. Some access points are open and you can simply connect to them. Others are hidden or use security features and you must configure your phone to be able to connect to them.

Turn off Wi-Fi when you're not using it to extend the life of your battery.

**NOTE:** If you are out of the Wi-Fi zone or have set Wi-Fi to off, additional charges may be applied by your mobile service provider for mobile data use.

### Turning Wi-Fi on and connecting to a Wi-Fi network

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Wi-Fi**.
- 2 Tap the switch  to turn Wi-Fi on and start scanning for available Wi-Fi networks.
  - Secured networks are indicated by a lock icon.
- 3 Tap a network to connect to it.
  - If the network is secured, you are prompted to enter a password or other credentials. (Ask your network administrator for details)

## Connecting to Networks and Devices

4 The Status Bar displays icons that indicate your Wi-Fi status.

### Bluetooth



Bluetooth allows you to share data with other Bluetooth-enabled devices and connect to Bluetooth headsets.


#### NOTE:

- LG is not responsible for the loss, interception or misuse of data sent or received via the Bluetooth wireless feature.
- Always ensure that you share and receive data with devices that are trusted and properly secured. If there are obstacles between the devices, the operating distance may be reduced.
- Some devices, especially those that are not tested or approved by Bluetooth SIG, may be incompatible with your device.

### Turning on Bluetooth and pairing up your phone with a Bluetooth device

You must pair your phone with another device before you connect to it.

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Bluetooth**.
- 2 Tap the switch  to turn Bluetooth on.
- 3 Tap the check box next to your phone's name to make your phone visible to other Bluetooth devices.

**NOTE:** To select the length of time that your device will be visible, tap the **Menu** icon  > **Visibility timeout**.



- 4 A list of available devices will be displayed. Choose the device you want to pair with from the list.
- 5 Depending on the type of device, you may have to enter matching codes, confirm matching codes, or the devices will automaticall pair.

Once the paring is successful, your device will connect to the other device.

**NOTE:** Some devices, especially headsets or hands-free car kits, may have a fixed Bluetooth PIN, such as 0000. If the other device has a PIN, you will be asked to enter it.

### Send data using the Bluetooth wireless feature

- 1 Select a file or item, such as a contact, calendar event or media file, from an appropriate application or from the **Downloads**  app.
- 2 Select the option for sending data via Bluetooth.

**NOTE:** The method for selecting an option may vary by data type.

- 3 Search for and pair with a Bluetooth-enabled device (if necessary).

### Receive data using the Bluetooth wireless feature

- 1 Pair both devices and send a file from the other device to yours.
- 2 Tap **Accept** to confirm that you are willing to receive data from the device.

## Connecting to Networks and Devices

### Connecting to Virtual Private Networks

Virtual private networks (VPNs) allows you to connect to resources inside a secure local network, from outside that network.

#### To add a VPN

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **More...** > **VPN**.

**NOTE:** You must configure a screen lock to use VPN.

- 2 Tap **Add VPN network**.
- 3 Tap the type of VPN you want to add.
- 4 In the screen that opens, follow the instructions from your network administrator to configure each component of the VPN settings.
- 5 Tap **Save**. The VPN will be added to the list on the VPN settings screen.

*cited in S. T. v. the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## PC connections with a USB cable

Learn to connect your device to a PC with a USB cable using the different USB connection modes.

### Transferring music, photos and videos using Media device (MTP)

- 1 Connect your phone to a PC using the USB cable provided with your phone.
- 2 Drag the Status Bar down and tap the current USB connection.
- 3 Tap the **Media device (MTP)** option.

### Synchronize with Windows Media Player

Ensure that Windows Media Player is installed on your PC.

- 1 Use the USB cable to connect the phone to a PC on which Windows Media Player has been installed.
  - 2 Select the **Media device (MTP)** option. When connected, a pop-up window will appear on the PC.
  - 3 Open Windows Media Player to synchronize music files.
  - 4 Edit or enter your device's name in the pop-up window (if necessary).
  - 5 Select and drag the music files you want to the sync list.
  - 6 Start synchronization.
- The following requirements must be satisfied to synchronize with Windows Media Player.

## Connecting to Networks and Devices





Items	Requirement
OS	Microsoft Windows XP SP2, Vista or higher
Window Media Player version	Windows Media Player 10 or higher

- If the Windows Media Player version is lower than 10, install version 10 or higher.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



# Calls

## Making a call


- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open the dial pad.
- 2 Enter the number using the dial pad. To delete a digit, tap .
- 3 Tap  to make a call.
- 4 To end a call, tap .

**TIP!** To enter “+” to make international calls, touch and hold .

## Calling your contacts

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open your contact list.
- 2 Scroll through the contact list or tap the **Search contacts** box and enter the contacts name. You can also scroll the alphabet bar along the right side of the screen.
- 3 In the list, tap  next to the desired contact to make the call.

## Answering and rejecting a call

- Swipe  in any direction to answer the incoming call.
- Swipe  in any direction to decline an incoming call.

### **TIP! Decline with message**

You can send a message quickly using this function. This is useful if you need to reject a call during a meeting.

## Calls

### Adjusting the in-call volume

To adjust the in-call volume during a call, use the Volume Up and Volume Down Keys on the left side of the phone.

### Making a second call

- 1 During your first call, tap **Menu** icon , touch **Add call** and dial the number. You can also go to the recently dialed numbers list by tapping **Call logs** or search contacts by tapping **Contacts** and selecting the contact you want to call.
- 2 Tap  to make the call.
- 3 Your initial call is placed on hold.
- 4 Tap  if you want to start a conference call.
- 5 To end active calls, tap .

cited in *CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley*  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017


**NOTE:** You are charged for each call you make.

**TIP!** Tap **Manage members** to end or separate individual calls from the conference call.

## Viewing your call logs



From the Home screen, tap  and choose the **Call logs** tab. A complete list of all dialed, received and missed calls is displayed.

### TIP!

- Tap any call log entry to view the date, time and duration of the call.
- Tap the **Menu** icon , then tap **Delete all** to delete all the recorded items or tap **Delete** to delete individual items.

## Call settings

You can configure phone call settings such as call forwarding, as well as other special features offered by your provider.


- 1 From the Home screen, tap .
- 2 Tap the **Menu** icon .
- 3 Tap **Call settings** and choose the options that you wish to adjust.

*cited in City of Berkeley Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 and received on April 17, 2017*





# Contacts

Add contacts to your phone and synchronize them with the contacts in your Google account or other accounts that support contact syncing.

## Searching for a contact

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open your contact list.
- 2 Tap the **Search contacts** box and enter the contacts name. You can also scroll the alphabet bar along the right side of the screen.

## Adding a new contact


- 1 From the Home screen, tap  and enter the new contact's number.
- 2 Tap the **Menu** icon  > **Add to Contacts** > **New contact**.
- 3 If you want to add a picture to the new contact, tap . Choose from **Take photo** or **Select from Gallery**.
- 4 Tap  at the top of the screen and select the account you want to save the contact to.
- 5 Tap a category of contact information and enter the details about your contact.
- 6 Tap **Save**.




## Favorite contacts

You can classify frequently called contacts as favorites.



### Adding a contact to your favorites

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open your contact list.
- 2 Tap a contact to view its details.
- 3 Tap the star at the top right corner of the screen. The star will turn yellow.

### Removing a contact from your favorites list

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open your contact list.
- 2 Tap the **Favorites** tab and choose a contact to view its details.
- 3 Tap the yellow color star at the top right corner of the screen. The star turns gray and the contact is removed from your favorites.

## Creating a group



- 1 From the Home screen, tap  to open your contact list.
- 2 Tap the **Groups** tab, then tap the **Menu** icon  > **New group**.
- 3 Enter a name for the new group. You can also set a ringtone for the newly created group.
- 4 Tap **Add members** to add contacts to the group.
- 5 Tap **Save** to save the group.

**NOTE:** If you delete a group, the contacts assigned to that group will not be lost. They will remain in your contacts.

# Messaging


Your phone combines text and multimedia messages into one intuitive, easy-to-use menu.

## Sending a message

- 1 Tap  on the Home screen and tap  to compose a new message.
- 2 Enter a contact name or contact number in the **To** field. As you enter the contact name, matching contacts will appear. You can tap a suggested recipient. You can add more than one contact.

**NOTE:** You will be charged for each text message you send to every person.

- 3 Tap the text field and begin composing your message.
- 4 Tap the **Menu** icon  to access the messaging options.

**TIP!** You can tap the  icon to attach a file you want to share.

- 5 Tap **Send** to send your message.

### **WARNING**

- The 160-character limit may vary from country to country, depending on the language and how the text message is coded.
- If an image, video or audio file is added to an text message, it is automatically converted into a multimedia message and you are charged accordingly.

## View mode for the Messaging app

Unread messages are located at the top. Other messages exchanged with another party are displayed in threads and in chronological order so that you can conveniently see an overview of your conversation.

## Changing your message settings

Your phone message settings are pre-defined, so you can send messages immediately. You can change the settings according to your preferences.

- Open the **Messaging** app and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Settings**.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Email

You can use the Email application to read emails from services like Gmail. The Email application supports the following account types: POP3, IMAP and Exchange. Your service provider or system administrator can provide you with the account settings you need.

### Managing an email account

The first time you open the Email application, a setup wizard opens to help you to set up an email account.

After the initial setup, the Email application displays the contents of your inbox. If you have added more than one account, you can switch among accounts.


#### To add another email account:

- Open the **Email** application and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Settings** > **Add account**.

#### To change an email account's settings:

- Open the **Email** application and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Settings**. Then tap **General settings** to configure settings for all accounts or tap an individual account to configure settings only for that particular account.

#### To delete an email account:

- Open the **Email** application and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Settings** > **Menu** icon  > **Remove account** > tap an account > **Remove** > **Yes**.

*cited in CTIA v. Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*




## Working with account folders

Open the **Email** application and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Folders**.

Each account has an Inbox, Outbox, Sent and Drafts folder. Depending on the features supported by your account's service provider, you may have additional folders.

## Composing and sending email

### To compose and send a message



- 1 While in the **Email** application, tap .
- 2 Enter an address for the message's intended recipient. As you enter text, matching addresses will be proposed from your Contacts. Separate multiple addresses using semicolons.
- 3 Tap the **Cc/Bcc** field to copy recipients. Tap  to attach files, if needed.
- 4 Tap the message field and enter your message.
- 5 Tap  to send the email.

If you aren't connected to a network, for example, if you're working in airplane mode, the messages that you send will be stored in your Outbox folder until you connect to a network again.

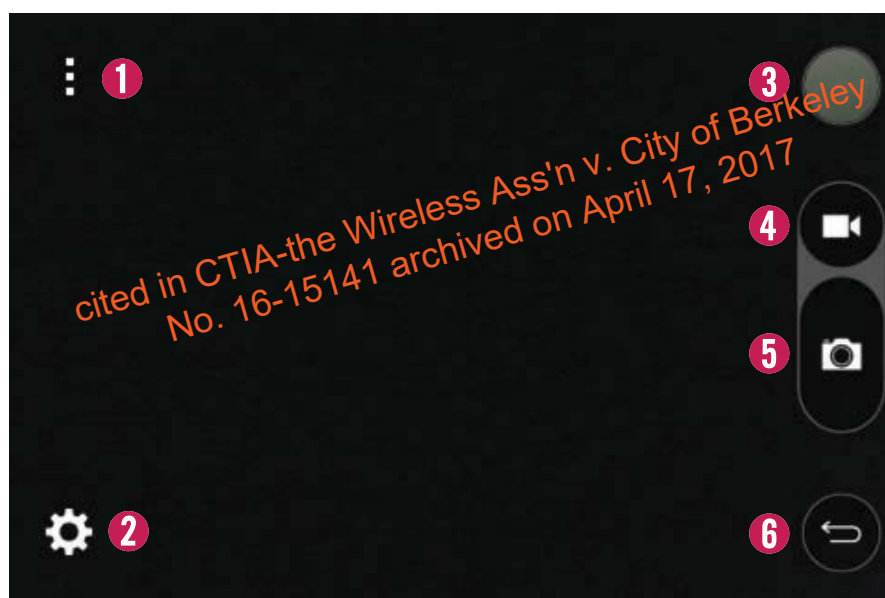
## Camera and Video

To open the Camera app, tap  from the Home screen, then tap **Camera** .

**TIP!** You can quickly access the Camera app without unlocking your phone first.

- While the screen is off, press and hold the **Volume Down Key**  or **Volume Up Key**  on the left side of the phone.

## Getting to know the viewfinder









- 1 Menu** – Tap to display camera options on the viewfinder screen.
- 2 Settings** – Tap this icon to open the settings menu.
- 3 Gallery** – Tap to view the last photo or video you captured. This enables you to access your Gallery and view saved photos and videos while in camera mode.
- 4 Record** – Tap to start recording a video.

- 5 **Capture** – Tap to capture a photo.
- 6 **Back Key** – Tap to exit the camera.

**NOTE:** The memory capacity may differ depending on how you configure your camera settings.

## Using the advanced settings

In the viewfinder, tap  to open the advanced options. You can change the camera settings by scrolling through the list. After selecting the option, tap the **Back Key** .

	<p>This option sets the image and video size (resolution). Choose from <b>3M(2048x1536)</b>, <b>W2M(2048x1350)</b>, <b>2M(1536x1536)</b> and <b>1M(1280x960)</b> for pictures. For videos, the option is <b>WVGA(800x480)</b>.</p>
	<p>This option enables you to take a picture using a voice command. Choose <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b>. If set to On, say <b>Cheese</b>, <b>Smile</b>, <b>Whiskey</b>, <b>Kimchi</b>, or <b>LG</b> to take a photo.</p>
	<p>This option sets a delay after the Capture/Record button is tapped. This is ideal if you want to be in the photo or video. Choose from <b>Off</b>, <b>3 sec</b>, and <b>10 sec</b>.</p>
	<p>This option displays grid lines so that you can easily take pictures and record videos.</p>

## Camera and Video




This option sets the location where you want to save your images and videos.

Choose **SD card** or **Internal storage**. This menu is displayed only when the microSD card is inserted.



This option provides a quick help guide.

### Taking a photo

- 1 Open the **Camera** app.
- 2 Point the lens toward the subject you want to photograph.
- 3 Tap the **Capture** button  to take the photo.

### Once you've taken a photo

- 1 Tap the image preview next to the Record button to view the last photo you captured.
- 2 Tap **Gallery**, then tap **OK**.






**TIP!** To make one of the available apps the default viewing app, make sure that the **Use as default app option** is selected.

**NOTE:** You can also choose the Photos app to view and edit your photo.

CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



The following icons appear at the top of the Gallery screen:

	Tap to edit the photo (such as cropping, rotating, tuning, adding effects, and more).
	Tap to take another photo immediately.
	Tap to send your photo to others or share it via social network services.
	Tap to delete the photo.
	Tap to set the picture to your Favorites folder.

Tap the **Menu** icon  to open the following advanced options.

**Set image as** – Tap to use the photo as a **Contact photo**, **Home screen wallpaper**, **Lock screen wallpaper**, or **Wallpaper**.

**Move** – Tap to move the photo or video to another album.

**Copy** – Tap to copy the selected photo or video and save it to another album.

**Slideshow** – Tap to display a slideshow using all of your photos.

**Rotate left/right** – Tap to rotate the picture to the left or right.

**Crop** – Tap to crop your photo.

**Add location** – Tap to add location information to your photo.

**Rename** – Tap to change the name of the selected photo or video.

**Print** – Tap to print the photo.

**Details** – Tap to display information about the photo or video.



## Camera and Video

### Viewing your saved photos and videos



You can access your saved photos and videos when in camera mode. Just tap the image preview next to the Record button.

- 1 Choose the app to use to view and/or edit your photos.
- 2 Tap **Gallery** or **Photos**, then tap **OK**.
  - To view more photos, scroll left or right.
  - To zoom in or out, double-tap the screen or place two fingers and spread them apart (move your fingers closer together to zoom out).

### Recording a video

- 1 Open the **Camera** app.
- 2 The video camera viewfinder appears on the screen.
- 3 Point the lens toward the subject you want to capture in your video.
- 4 Tap the **Record** button  once to start recording.
- 5 A timer showing the length of the video is displayed.
- 6 Tap the **Stop** button  to stop recording.

#### NOTE:




- Tap  to capture a screen shot while you record.
- Tap  to pause while recording a video.
- While recording a video, place two fingers on the screen and pinch to use the Zoom function.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017


## After recording a video

Tap the image preview next to the Record button to view the last video you recorded.

The following icons appear at the top of the Gallery screen:

	Tap to record another video immediately.
	Tap to send your video to others or share it via social network services.
	Tap to delete the video.

## Watching your saved videos

- 1 In the viewfinder, tap the image preview next to the Record button.
- 2 Your Gallery will appear on the screen.
- 3 Tap  to play the video.

## Adjusting the volume when viewing a video

To adjust the volume of a video while it is playing, use the Volume Keys on the left side of the phone.

## Unique LG Features

### Guest Mode

To protect your privacy or limit some applications to your children, you can use the Guest mode. When you lend your phone to others, you can limit the applications to be displayed.

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Guest mode**.
- 2 Tap **Lock screen type** to set the pattern used to enter Guest mode.
- 3 Tap **Allowed app** to select the apps you want to allow others to view under Guest mode.
- 4 Tap **Wallpaper** to change the wallpaper for the Guest mode Home screen.
- 5 Tap the switch  to enable Guest mode.

**NOTE:** If you have not set a lock code, you will be prompted to create one.

### Knock Code

The Knock Code feature allows you to instantly access your Home screen by tapping a customized pattern anywhere on the screen.

#### To activate the Knock Code feature

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **Lock screen** > **Select screen lock** > **Knock Code**.

- 2 A screen that guides you through setting up a Knock Code will be displayed. You have to create a Backup PIN as a safety measure in case you forget your Knock Code.

## KnockON

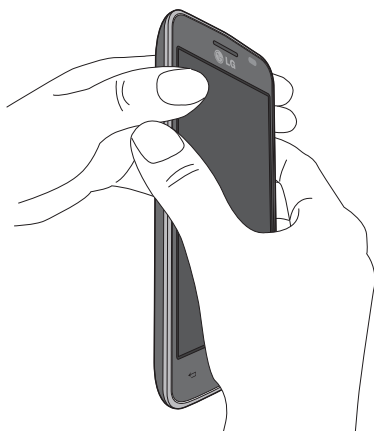
The KnockON feature allows you to turn the screen on and off by simply double tapping on it.

### Using KnockON

- When the screen is off, double-tap the center of it quickly to unlock it.
- To lock the screen, double-tap the Status Bar in any screen (except on the camera viewfinder) or an empty area on the Home screen.

## QuickMemo+

The QuickMemo+ feature allows you to capture screen shots and use them to create memos. You can use QuickMemo+ to easily create memos during a call, with a saved picture or on the current phone screen.



- 1 Access the **QuickMemo+** feature by pressing both Volume Keys for one second on the screen you want to capture.

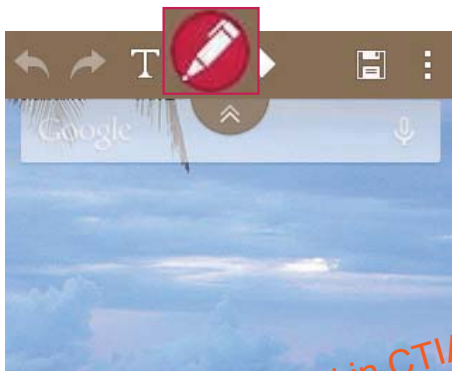
# Unique LG Features

OR



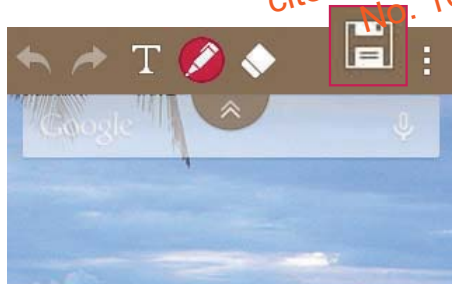
OR


Drag the Status Bar down and tap  on the Quick Settings Bar.



2 Create a memo using the toolbar options.


*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*










3 Tap  in the toolbar to save the memo to the QuickMemo+ app or your Gallery.

**NOTE:** Please use a fingertip while using the QuickMemo+ function. Do not use your fingernail.

## Using the QuickMemo+ options

The QuickMemo+ toolbar options allow you to easily create memos. Tap the toolbar tab  to access and hide the QuickMemo+ toolbar icons.

	Tap to undo the most recent action.
	Tap to redo the most recently deleted action.
	Tap to type text in your memo.
	Tap to select the pen type and color. You can also select its thickness and transparency.
	Tap to use the eraser to erase pen marks from the memo.
	Tap to save the memo you've created to your Gallery or to the QuickMemo+ app.
	Tap to access additional options.

## QuickMemo+ Menu Options

From the QuickMemo+ screen, tap the **Menu** icon  to access the following options.

- Tap **Insert** to insert files stored in your phone/memory card into the memo.
- Tap **Move** to move the current memo into another folder.
- Tap **Delete** to delete the current memo.
- Tap **Export** to export the current memo to internal storage or the SD card.
- Tap **Share** to share the memo with others.

## Unique LG Features





- Tap **Paper style** to set the paper background for your memo.

### To exit the QuickMemo+ feature

Tap the **Back Key**  to exit the QuickMemo+ feature.

### Viewing saved memos

Memos are saved in the **Gallery** app or **QuickMemo+** app.

- From the Home screen, tap  > the **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Gallery** , then tap the **QuickMemo+** album.
- From the Home screen, tap  > the **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **QuickMemo+** , then tap the your memo.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



# Multimedia

## Gallery

You can store multimedia files in the internal and external memory for easy access to all your multimedia files. Use this application to view multimedia files like pictures and videos.

- From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Gallery** .

### NOTE:

- Some file formats are not supported, depending on the software installed on the device.
- Some files may not play properly, depending on how they are encoded.

## Viewing pictures

Open the Gallery to display your available albums. When some applications save a picture, a folder might be automatically created to contain the picture. For example, capturing a screenshot automatically creates the Screenshots folder. Pictures are displayed by creation date in a folder. Select a picture to view it full screen. Scroll left or right to view the next or previous image.

### Zooming in and out

Use one of the following methods to zoom in on an image:

- Double-tap anywhere to zoom in.
- Spread two fingers apart on any place to zoom in. Pinch to zoom out, or double-tap to return.

## Multimedia

### Playing videos

Video files show the  icon in the preview. Select a video to watch it and tap .

#### NOTE:



- Some file formats are not supported, depending on the device software.
- If the file size exceeds the available memory, an error can occur when you open files.

### Editing photos

When viewing a photo, tap **Edit**  and use the advanced editing options.

### Deleting images

Use one of the following methods:

- In an album, tap  and select photos/videos by tapping them, then tap **Delete**.
- When viewing a photo or video preview, tap .

### Setting a photo as the wallpaper

When viewing a photo, tap the **Menu** icon  and select **Set image as** to set the image as the Home screen or Lock screen wallpaper.







*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on Apr 17, 2017*

## Videos

Your phone has a video player that lets you play all of your favorite videos.

### Playing a video

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Gallery** .
- 2 Open the album that contains the desired video and tap it to play it.

	Tap to pause video playback.
	Tap to resume video playback.
	Touch and hold to fast-forward in 3 second increments. Tap once to fast-forward 10 seconds.
	Touch and hold to rewind in 3 second increments. Tap once to rewind 10 seconds.
	Tap to adjust the video volume.
	Tap to lock a video screen.

To change the volume while watching a video, press the Volume Keys on the left side of the phone.

Touch and hold a video in the list to access **Share**, **Delete**, **Rename** and **Details**.



## Multimedia








**NOTE:** While watching a video, slide the left side of the screen up and down to adjust the brightness. Slide the right side of the screen up and down to adjust the volume. You can also slide the bottom part of the screen to the right or left to fast-forward and rewind.

## Music




Your phone has a music player that lets you play all of your favorite tracks.

### Playing a song

- 1 From the Home screen, tap **Apps**  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Music** .
- 2 Tap the **Songs** tab.
- 3 Tap the song you want to play.

	Tap to add the song to your Favorites playlist.
	Tap to set shuffle mode.
	Tap to set repeat mode.
	Tap to adjust the music volume.
	Tap to pause playback.
	Tap to resume playback.
	Tap to skip to the next track on the album or in the playlist. Touch and hold to fast-forward in 3 second increments.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

	Tap to go back to the beginning of the song. Tap twice to return to the previous song. Touch and hold to rewind in 3 second increments.
	Tap to see the Now playing playlist.
	Tap to access additional settings.

To change the volume while listening to music, press the Volume Keys on the left side of the phone.

Touch and hold any song in the list to access **Play**, **Add to playlist**, **Delete**, **Share**, **Set as ringtone**, **Details** and **Search**.

#### NOTE:


- Some file formats are not supported, depending on the phone's software.
- If the file size exceeds the available memory, an error may occur when you open files.
- Music file copyrights may be protected by international treaties and national copyright laws. Therefore, it may be necessary to obtain permission or a licence to reproduce or copy music.
- In some countries, national laws prohibit private copying of copyrighted material. Before downloading or copying the file, check the national laws of the relevant country concerning the use of such material.

*cited in CTIA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Tools

### Setting your alarm


- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Clock**  > .
- 2 Set the time and select **AM** or **PM**.
- 3 Set **Repeat**, **Snooze duration**, **Vibration**, **Alarm sound**, **Alarm volume**, **Auto app starter**, **Puzzle lock** and **Memo**.
- 4 Tap **Save** to save the alarm.

**NOTE:** To change alarm settings, tap the **Menu** icon  on the Alarms screen and select **Settings**.





### Using your calculator

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Calculator** .
- 2 Tap the number keys to enter numbers.
- 3 For simple calculations, tap the function you want to perform (, ,  or ) followed by .

**NOTE:** You can use the scientific calculator for more complex calculations when you rotate the screen horizontally.

**NOTE:** To check your previous calculation history, tap the **Menu** icon , select **Calculation history**.

## Adding an event to your calendar

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Calendar** .
- 2 Tap  and choose from **Day**, **Week**, **Month**, **Year**, or **Agenda** to change the month view.
- 3 Tap the date for which you wish to add an event and touch .
- 4 Tap the **Event name** field and enter the event name.
- 5 Tap the **Location** field and enter the location. Check the date and enter the time you wish your event to start and finish.
- 6 If you wish to add a note to your event, tap the **Description** field and enter the details.
- 7 If you wish to repeat the alarm, set the **Repeat** option. You can also set the **Reminders** option, if necessary.
- 8 Tap **Save** to save the event in the calendar.

## Tasks

The Tasks app can be synchronized with your MS Exchange account. You can create and manage your tasks using your phone or from MS Outlook or MS Office Outlook Web Access.






- 1 From the Home screen, tap **Apps**  > the **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Tasks** .
- 2 Tap the **Add task** icon  (in the upper-right corner of the screen).
- 3 Enter the necessary information.
- 4 Tap **Save** to save the task.

## Tools

### Voice Recorder

Use the voice recorder to record voice memos or other audio files.

#### Recording a sound or voice

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Voice Recorder** .
- 2 Tap  to begin recording.
- 3 Tap  to end the recording.
- 4 Tap  to listen to the recording.

**NOTE:** Tap  to access the list of recordings. You can listen to any saved recordings from the list. The available recording time may differ from actual recording time.

### Polaris Office




Polaris Office allows you to use various types of documents, such as MS Office documents and PDFs.

- From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Polaris Office** .



## Google+




Use this application to stay connected with people via Google's social network service.

- From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Google** folder  > **Google+** .

**NOTE:** This application may not be available depending on the region or service provider.

## Voice Search


Use this application to search webpages using voice.

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Google** folder  > **Voice Search** .
- 2 Say a keyword or phrase when **Speak now** appears on the screen. Select one of the suggested keywords that appear.

**NOTE:** This application may not be available depending on the region or service provider.

## Downloads

Use the Downloads app to view and access the files you've downloaded through your various apps.

- From the Home screen, tap **Apps**  > the **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Downloads** .

# Browsing the Web

## Browser







Use this application to browse the Internet. The Browser gives you a fast, full-color world of games, music, news, sports, entertainment and much more, right on your mobile phone wherever you are and whatever you enjoy.

**NOTE:** Additional charges apply when connecting to these services and downloading content. Check data charges with your network provider.

From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Browser** .

## Using the Browser toolbar

Scroll towards the top of the page to display the Browser toolbar. The following options are available.

	Tap to go back one page.
	Tap to go forward one page. This is the opposite of what happens when you tap the <b>Back Key</b>  , which takes you to the previous page.
	Tap to go to the Home page.
	Tap to add a new window.
	Tap to access bookmarks.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Viewing webpages


Tap the address field, enter the web address and tap  on the keyboard.

## Opening a page

To open a new page, tap  > .

To go to an open page, tap , scroll up or down, and tap the page to select it.

## Searching the web by voice

Tap the address field, tap , speak a keyword, and then select one of the suggested keywords that appear.

**NOTE:** This feature may not be available depending on the region or service provider.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Assn v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Bookmarks

To bookmark the current webpage, tap the **Menu** icon  > **Add to bookmarks** > **OK**.

To open a bookmarked webpage, tap  and select the desired bookmark.

## History

To open a web page from the list of recently visited web pages, tap  > **History** tab. To clear the history, tap  > **Yes**.

## Browsing the Web

### Chrome

Use Chrome to search for information and browse webpages.

From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Chrome** .

### Viewing webpages

Tap the address field, enter a web address or search criteria, and tap  on the keyboard.

### Opening a page

To open a new page, tap  > **+ New tab**.

To go to an open page, tap , scroll up or down, and tap the page to select it.

### Searching the web by voice

Tap the address field, tap , speak a keyword and select one of the suggested keywords that appear.

**NOTE:** This feature may not be available depending on the region or service provider.

### Syncing with other devices

Sync open tabs and bookmarks to use with Chrome from other devices when you are logged in with the same Google account.

To view open tabs on other devices, tap  > **+ New tab** > **Recent tabs** .  
Select a webpage to open.

## Access bookmarks

To view bookmarks, touch and hold the **Recent Apps Key**  > **Bookmarks**.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Settings

## Access the Settings menu

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings** .
- 2 Select a setting option and configure the desired settings.

## Wireless Networks settings

### < Airplane mode >


**Airplane mode** – Activating airplane mode disables all wireless connections.

### < Wi-Fi >

**Wi-Fi** – Turns on Wi-Fi to connect to available Wi-Fi networks. You can also set various other Wi-Fi settings.

#### **TIP! How to obtain the MAC address**

To set up a connection in some wireless networks with MAC filters, you may need to enter the MAC address of your phone in the router.

To find the MAC address, access the Wi-Fi settings and tap the **Menu** icon  > **Advanced Wi-Fi** > **MAC address**.

### < Bluetooth >

Turn the Bluetooth wireless feature on or off. You can also set various other Bluetooth settings.

### < Mobile data >

Displays the data usage and allows you to set a mobile data usage limit.

## < Call >

**Voicemail** – Allows you to set various options for your provider's voicemail service.

**Fixed dialing numbers** – Turn on and compile a list of numbers that can be called from your phone. You'll need your PIN2, which is available from your operator. Only numbers within the fixed dial list can be called from your phone.

**Caller ID** – Allows you to choose how to display your number in outgoing calls.

**Incoming voice call pop-up** – If you select this function, the incoming call pop-up will be displayed when using applications.

**Decline with message** – When you want to reject a call, you can send a quick message using this function. This is useful if you need to reject a call during a meeting.

**Privacy keeper** – Hides the caller name and number for an incoming call.

**Auto answer** – Allows you to enable or disable Auto answer with hands-free.

**Connection vibration** – Vibrates your phone when the other party answers.

**TTY mode** – Sets the TTY mode to communicate with TTY devices.

**Hearing aids** – Checkmark to turn on hearing aid compatibility.

**Power key ends call** – Checkmark to allow you to end voice calls by pressing the Power/Lock Key.

**Call duration** – View the duration for the last call made, all outgoing calls, all incoming calls and all calls combined. Tap an option to reset the counter.

**Sound settings** – Allows you to change the device's sound settings.

**Additional settings** – Allows you to change the following settings:

**Call forwarding** – Allows you to set the call forwarding options.

## Settings

**Call waiting** – If call waiting is activated, the phone will notify you of an incoming call while you are on a call (depending on your network provider).

< **More...** >

**Mobile networks** – Allows you to manage mobile data and set up APN for data service.

**VPN** – Allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

**NOTE:** This feature may not be available depending on the region or service provider.


## Device settings

< **Sound** >

**Sound profile** – Set the sound profile to **Sound**, **Vibrate only**, or **Silent**.

**Volumes** – Manage the volume for **Ringtone**, **Notification sound**, **Touch feedback & system**, and **Music, video, games & other media**.

**Quiet mode** – Allows you to set a schedule to configure the sound profile to silent. This mutes all sounds except alarms and media and allows repeat calls or calls from certain contacts to ring.


**Ringtone** – Sets the ringtone for calls. You can also add a ringtone by tapping the **New** icon  (at the upper-right corner of the screen).

**Notification sound** – Sets the sound for notifications. You can also add a notification sound by tapping the **New** icon  (at the upper-right corner of the screen).

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



**Ringtone with vibration** – Checkmark to set the phone to vibrate in addition to the ringtone when you receive calls.

**Vibration type** – Sets the incoming call vibration options. Choose from **Long Lasting**, **Rapid**, **Short repeated**, **Standard**, and **Ticktock**. Tap the **New** icon  (at the upper-right corner of the screen) to create your own vibration pattern.

**Vibrate on tap** – Checkmark to vibrate when you touch the screen (e.g., touch keys and make selections).

**Sound effects** – Tap to set dial pad touch tones, touch sounds, screen lock sound, and emergency tone.

**Message/call voice notifications** – Allows the phone to announce incoming calls and messages out loud.

## < Display >

**Brightness** – Allows you to adjust the screen brightness. Checkmark **Night brightness** to set brightness at 0% automatically between 12:00 AM ~ 06:00 AM.

**Screen timeout** – Set the amount of time before the screen times out.

**Screen-off effect** – Set the animation effect used when the screen turns off.

**Auto-rotate screen** – Set to switch orientation automatically when you rotate the phone.

**Daydream** – Allows the screensaver to display when the phone is sleeping while docked and/or charging.

**Font type** – Change the display font type.

**Font size** – Change the size of the display font.

## Settings

### < Home screen >

**Wallpaper** – Sets the wallpaper to use on your Home screen. Choose from **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, **Photos**, or **Wallpaper gallery**.

**Screen swipe effect** – Sets the animation effect used when you swipe to change screens. Choose from **Slide**, **Breeze**, **Accordion**, **Panorama**, **Carousel**, **Layer**, and **Domino**.

**Allow Home screen looping** – Checkmark to set the Home screen to scroll continuously, eliminating the need to scroll back in the opposite direction when you reach either end.

**Home backup & restore** – Backup and restore app layouts and the wallpaper.

**Help** – Displays some useful tips for the Home screen.

### < Lock screen >

**Select screen lock** – Set a screen lock to secure your phone. Set **None**, **Swipe**, **Knock Code**, **Pattern**, **PIN** or **Password**.

**Wallpaper** – Select the wallpaper for your lock screen from the **Gallery** or **Wallpaper gallery**.

**Widgets** – Allows you to show widgets on the lock screen. To add widgets while on the lock screen, slide the top part of the screen towards the right and tap the Add widget icon

**Shortcuts** – Customize the shortcuts on the lock screen.

**Contact info for lost phone** – Show owner info on the lock screen in case your phone is lost.

**Lock timer** – Allows you to choose a quantity of time to lock your phone after the screen times out.

Filed 5/2/17 CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

**Power button instantly locks** – Allows you to lock the phone when the Power/Lock Key is pressed.

### < Gestures >

**Silence incoming calls** – Flip the device to silence incoming calls.

**Snooze or stop alarm** – Flip the device to snooze or stop the alarm.

**Pause video** – Flip the device to pause the video.

**Help** – Touch to get information on using the Gesture functions of your device.

**Motion sensor calibration** – Improve the accuracy of the tilt and speed of the sensor.

### < Storage >

**Internal Storage** – Allows you to view information about the internal storage usage.

**SD Card** – Check total available SD card space. Tap **Unmount SD card** for safe removal of the SD card. If no SD card is mounted, tap **Mount SD card**. Tap **Erase SD card** if you want to delete all data from the SD card.

### < Battery >

The Battery charge information is displayed on a battery graphic along with the percentage of the remaining charge and its status. Tap the Battery charge icon to display the Battery use screen to see battery usage level and battery use details. It displays which components and applications are using the most battery power. Tap one of the entries to see more detailed information.

**Battery percentage on status bar** – Checkmark to display the battery level percentage on the Status Bar next to the battery icon.

## Settings

**Battery saver** – Tap the switch  to toggle between On and Off.

**Turn Battery saver on** – Choose to turn battery saver on when the battery charge gets to a certain battery level. Choose from **Immediately**, **10% battery**, **20% battery**, **30% battery** and **50% battery**.

**Auto-sync** – Turns off Auto-sync.

**Wi-Fi** – Turns off Wi-Fi if data is not in use.

**Bluetooth** – Turns off Bluetooth if it's not connected to a device.

**Vibrate on tap** – Turns off touch feedback.

**Brightness** – Adjusts the brightness.

**Screen timeout** – Adjusts the screen timeout.

**Help** – Displays information about the battery saver feature.

### < Apps >

Use the Apps menu to view details about the applications installed on your phone, manage their data, and force them to stop.

Swipe left and right to select one of the three tabs across the top of the screen to view detailed information for **Downloaded**, **On SD Card**, **Running**, and **All** applications. Tap an entry to view more information, tap **Stop** (or **Force stop**), then **OK** to stop it from running.

### < Default message app >

Sets your default messaging app. Choose from **Messaging**, **Hangouts**, or any other available downloaded application.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n, City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 11, 2017

## Personal settings

### < Accounts & sync >

Permits applications to synchronize data in the background, whether or not you are actively working in them. Deselecting the **Auto-sync data** setting can save battery power and lower (but not eliminate) data usage.

### < Guest mode >

Use Guest mode when you let someone else use your phone. They will only be able to use the applications that you've selected. Once you set it up, you can easily put your phone in Guest mode by drawing the guest pattern on the Lock screen, which is different from your normal unlock pattern. Tap **Help** for more information.

**NOTE:** To use Guest mode, set the Lock screen to pattern lock. Guest can also use apps not pre-selected but linked to preselected apps.

### < Location >

#### Mode

**High accuracy (GPS and networks)** – Use GPS, Wi-Fi and mobile networks to estimate location.

**Battery saving (Networks only)** – Use Wi-Fi and mobile networks to estimate location.

**Device sensors only (GPS only)** – Use GPS to pinpoint your location.

#### Recent Location Request

Displays apps that have recently requested location information.

## Settings

### Location Services

Allows you to view and manage your Google location settings.

### < Security >

**Encrypt phone** – Allows you to encrypt the phone to keep it secure. After encryption, a PIN or password needs to be entered each time you power the phone on.

**Encrypt SD card storage** – Allows you to encrypt the SD card data to keep it secure. After encryption, you will not be able to use it in other devices.

**Set up SIM card lock** – Allows you to require a PIN to use the phone.

**Password typing visible** – Shows the last character of the hidden password as you type.

**Phone administrators** – Allows you to view or deactivate device administrators.

**Unknown sources** – Checkmark to allow installation of non-Play Store apps.

**Verify apps** – Checkmark to disallow or warn before installation of apps that may cause harm to your phone.

**Notification access** – Allows applications to have the ability to be notified when notifications are posted or removed from the system.

**Storage type** – Displays the storage type for credential storage.

**Trusted credentials** – Displays trusted CA certificates.

**Install from storage** – Allows you to install encrypted certificates from internal or external storage.

**Clear credentials** – Allows you to remove all certificates.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## < Language & input >

**Language** – Allows you to choose a language to use on your device.

**Default** – Sets the default on-screen keyboard to use when entering text.

**LG Keyboard** – Tap  to change the following LG Keyboard settings:

**Input language and keyboard layout** – Sets the keyboard language and layout (QWERTY/Phone).

**Keyboard height and layout** – Allows you to adjust the keyboard's bottom row keys, keyboard height, and keyboard theme.

**Show word suggestions** – Shows words through text prediction.

**Auto-correction** – Allows you to choose the level of auto-correction.

**Update word suggestions** – Allows you to update word suggestions.

**Additional settings** – Allows you to set the following options.

**Vibrate on keypress** – Checkmark to provide a vibration when you tap the keyboard keys.

**Sound on keypress** – Checkmark to provide a sound when you tap the keyboard keys.

**Pop-up on keypress** – Checkmark to display a bubble with each character as you type.

**Auto-capitalization** – Capitalize the first word of each sentence automatically.

**Auto-punctuation** – Automatically inserts a period when the space key is double-tapped.

**Spell checker** – Checkmark to show spelling errors.

**Clear word suggestion history** – Clear history of words suggested based on your input.



## Settings

**Personal dictionary** – Add words to your word suggestions.

**Help** – Displays helpful information about the LG Keyboard.

**Google voice typing** – Checkmark to allow use of the Google voice typing feature to enter text. Tap  to change the desired settings.

**Voice Search** – Allows you to set the following voice search options.

**Language** – Sets the language for the Google voice search feature.

**Speech output** – Sets when to use speech output. Choose from **On**, **Hands-free only**, and **Off**. To turn on speech output only when you've got a headset attached to your phone, select Hands-free only.

**"Ok Google" Detection** – Allows you to start the Google Search app simply by saying "OK Google".

**Block offensive words** – Checkmark to hide offensive voice results.

**Audio History** – Activation is required when using voice commands, such as "Ok Google" or touching a microphone icon. A recording of the next thing you say, plus a few seconds before, may be used and stored by Google and associated with your Google Account to help recognize your voice and improve speech recognition.

**Manage Audio History** – Allows you to manage your audio history.

**Bluetooth headset** – Checkmark to record audio through a connected Bluetooth headset.

**Text-to-speech output** – Sets the preferred speech engine and speech rate (slow vs. fast). Also plays a short demonstration of speech synthesis.

**Pointer speed** – Sets the pointer speed using a slide bar to select it.

*Noted in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## < Backup & reset >

**Back up my data** – Backup your app data, Wi-Fi passwords, and other settings to Google servers.

**Backup account** – Allows you to set the account to which you want to backup data to.

**Automatic restore** – When reinstalling an app, restore backed up settings and data.

**Factory data reset** – Reset your settings to the factory default values and delete all your data.

## System settings

### Shortcut key

Tap the **Shortcut key** switch  (at the upper-right corner of the screen) to toggle it On or Off. On allows quick access to apps by pressing and holding the Volume Keys.

### < Date & time >

**Automatic date & time** – Checkmark to use the network-provided date and time.

**Automatic time zone** – Checkmark to use the network-provided time zone.

**Set date** – Tap to manually set the date to use for your phone. This setting is grayed-out when the Automatic date & time setting is checkmarked.

**Set time** – Tap to manually set the time to use for your phone. This setting is grayed-out when the Automatic date & time setting is checkmarked.

Noted in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## Settings


**Select time zone** – Tap to select a time zone other than the one provided by the network. This setting is grayed-out when the Automatic time zone setting is checkmarked.

**Use 24-hour format** – Checkmark to display the time using the 24-hour time format (for example, 13:00 instead of 1:00 pm).


**Select date format** – Sets the format for displaying dates.

### < Accessibility >

Use the Accessibility settings to configure accessibility plug-ins you have installed on your phone.

**TalkBack** – Allows you to set up the TalkBack function which assists people with impaired vision by providing verbal feedback. Tap the switch  to turn it on. Tap **Settings** at the bottom of the screen to adjust the TalkBack settings.

**Font size** – Sets the font size. Choose from **Normal** and **Large**.

**Touch zoom** – Tap the **Touch zoom** switch  to toggle it On or Off. On allows you to zoom in and out by triple-tapping the screen.

**Message/call voice notifications** – Tap the switch  to toggle it On or Off. On allows you to hear automatic spoken alerts for incoming calls and messages.

**Screen shade** – Checkmark to dim the screen's backlight for a darker contrast.

**Accessibility shortcut** – Tap the Accessibility shortcut switch  to toggle it On or Off. On quickly enables accessibility features.

**Text-to-speech output** – Sets the text-to-speech preferred engine and speech rate setting. Text-to-speech output provides an audible readout of text, for example, the contents of text messages, and the Caller ID for incoming calls.

**Audio type** – Sets the audio type. Choose **Mono** or **Stereo**.

**Sound balance** – Routes the sound through both the right and left channel when a headset is connected. To manually set the audio route, move the slider on the sound balance slide bar to set it.


**Turn off all sounds** – Checkmark to turn off all sounds.

**Captions** – Tap the **Captions** switch  to toggle it On or Off. On customizes caption settings for those with hearing impairments. Set **Language**, **Font size**, and **Caption style**.

**Touch feedback time** – Sets the touch feedback. Choose from **Short**, **Medium**, and **Long**.

**Touch assistant** – Tap the Touch assistant switch  to toggle it On or Off. On shows a touch board with easy access to common actions.

**Screen timeout** – Sets the screen timeout. Choose from **30 sec**, **1 min**, **2 min**, **5 min**, **10 min**, **15 min**, and **Keep screen turned on**.

**Touch control areas** – Tap the **Touch control areas** switch  to toggle it On or Off. On allows you to select an area of the screen to limit touch control. Press the **Volume Down Key** and tap the **Home Key** at the same time to activate and deactivate this feature.

**Auto-rotate screen** – Checkmark to allow the device to rotate the screen depending on the device orientation (portrait or landscape).

**Password voice confirmation** – Checkmark to allow voice confirmation of characters when entering passwords.

**Power key ends call** – Checkmark so that you can end voice calls by pressing the Power/Lock Key.

## Settings

**Accessibility settings shortcut** – Sets quick, easy access to selected features when you triple-tap the **Home Key** . Choose from **Off**, **Show all**, **TalkBack**, **Touch assistant**, and **Accessibility settings**.

**One-touch input** – Checkmark to enable one-touch input. It allows each finger touch to enter letter or character on the LG keyboard.

### < Printing >

**Cloud Print** – This menu allows you to access your cloud print services.

### < About phone >

This menu allows you to manage your software updates and view various information relating to your device.

**Phone name** – Allows you to change your phone name. This will be your phone name for Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, etc.

**Update Center** – Check updates for apps and software provided by LG Electronics.

**Network** – Allow you to view your network, network type and strength, service state, roaming status, mobile network state, and IP address.

**Status** – Allow you to view your phone number, IMEI, and IMEI SV.

**Battery** – Allows you to view the battery status, battery level, and battery use information.

**Hardware info** – Allows you to view the model number, up time, Wi-Fi MAC address and Bluetooth address.

**Software info** – Allows you to view the Android version, baseband version, kernel version, build number, and software version.

**Legal info** – Allow you to view LG apps rights agreement, open source licenses and Google legal information.



**Patent information** – Display LG patent information.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Phone software update

### Update your smart phone without a PC (FOTA)

This feature allows you to conveniently update your phone's software to a newer version via Firmware Over-the-Air (FOTA), without connecting to a PC with a USB cable.

- 1 From the Home screen, tap  > **Apps** tab (if necessary) > **Settings**  > **About phone** > **Update Center** > **Software Update**.
- 2 Select the desired option.
  - **Update now** – You can check the new software update and conduct the update.
  - **Check current version** – You can check the current software version.
  - **Last update** – Displays the date of the last software update.

#### NOTE:

- After the download is complete, you can install the software immediately or select a later time for the installation.
- Each software version is updated sequentially. Even after the update is completed, check if there is any newer version available.
- LG reserves the right to make firmware updates available only for selected models at its own discretion and does not guarantee the availability of the newer version of the firmware for all phone models.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Assn v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

**Notice: Open Source Software**

To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses, that is contained in this product, please visit <http://opensource.lge.com>.

In addition to the source code, all referred license terms, warranty disclaimers and copyright notices are available for download.

LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to [opensource@lge.com](mailto:opensource@lge.com). This offer is valid for three (3) years from the date on which you purchased the product.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Accessories

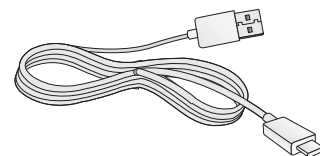
These accessories are available for use with your phone. **(Items described below may be optional and sold separately.)**

**Charger adapter**



**USB cable**

Connect your phone and PC.



**Battery**



**User Guide**

Learn more about your phone.



*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*


**NOTE:**

- Always use genuine LG accessories. Failure to do this may void your warranty.
- Accessories may vary in different regions.









## FAQ

Please check to see if any problems you have encountered with your phone are described in this section before taking the phone in for service or calling a service representative.







Category Sub-Category	Question	Answer
<b>Bluetooth</b> Bluetooth Devices	What are the functions available via Bluetooth?	You can connect Bluetooth audio devices such as a Stereo/Mono headset or Car Kit. You can also connect with compatible Bluetooth devices using the Gallery and Contacts apps to share pictures, videos, contacts, etc. Also when an FTP server is connected to a compatible device, you can share contents stored in the phone's memory or in the microSD card.
<b>Data</b> Contacts Backup	How can I back up Contacts?	The Contacts data can be synchronized between your phone and Gmail™.
<b>Data</b> Synchronization	Is it possible to set up one-way sync with Gmail?	Only two-way synchronization is available.
<b>Data</b> Synchronization	Is it possible to synchronize all of the Email folders?	The Inbox is automatically synchronized. You can view other folders by tapping the <b>Menu</b> icon  , then tapping <b>Folders</b> to choose a different folder.
<b>Google™ Service</b> Gmail Log-In	Should I have to log into Gmail whenever I want to access Gmail?	Once you log in to Gmail, you don't need to log in again.
<b>Google Service</b> Google Account	Is it possible to filter emails?	No, email filtering is not supported via the phone.




## FAQ

Category Sub-Category	Question	Answer
Phone Function YouTube™	Is it possible to play YouTube videos?	Yes, YouTube videos are supported but may have to be viewed through the YouTube app (and not through the Chrome app).
Phone Function Email	What happens when I execute another app while writing an email?	Your email will automatically be saved as a draft.
Phone Function Ringtone	Is there a file size limitation for when I want to use an MP3 file as a ringtone?	There is no file size limitation.
Phone Function Receiving Messages	My phone won't receive messages anymore. How can I fix this?	<p>Your phone can't receive new messages when there is less than 10MB of space available in the phone's memory. Check your phone memory and delete some data (such as messages, pictures, or downloaded apps) to free up some space.</p> <p><b>To check your phone memory:</b> From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b>  &gt; <b>Storage</b>.</p>
Phone Function Message Time	My phone does not display the time of receipt for messages older than 24 hrs. How can I change this?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open the message thread that contains the message you want to check.</li> <li>2. Touch and hold the message. Tap <b>Details</b> in the Context menu that appears.</li> </ol>
Phone Function microSD Card	What is the maximum supported size for a memory card?	32 GB memory cards are compatible.
Phone Function Navigation	Is it possible to install another navigation app on my phone?	Any app that is available on Play Store and is compatible with the hardware can be installed and used.

Category Sub-Category	Question	Answer
Phone Function Synchronization	Is it possible to synchronize my contacts from all of my email accounts?	Only Gmail and MS Exchange server (Company Email Server) contacts can be synchronized.
Phone Function Wait and Pause	Is it possible to save a contact with Wait and Pause in the numbers?	<p>If you transferred a contact with the wait and pause functions saved into the number, they won't work. You'll need to re-save each number.</p> <p><b>How to re-save with Wait and Pause:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap the <b>Phone</b> icon .</li> <li>2. Enter the number, then tap the <b>Menu</b> icon .</li> <li>3. Tap <b>Add 2-sec pause</b> or <b>Add wait</b>, then continue entering the numbers and save it.</li> </ol>
Phone Function Security	What are the phone's security functions?	You're able to set the phone to require the entry of a screen unlock sequence (pattern, PIN, or password) before the phone can be accessed or used.
Phone Function Unlock Pattern	What should I do if I forget my Unlock Pattern?	After 5 unsuccessful attempts, you can tap <b>Forgot Pattern?</b> at the bottom of the screen and use your Google Account information or Backup PIN to unlock your phone.
Phone Function Unlock Pattern	How do I create an Unlock Pattern?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b> .</li> <li>2. Tap <b>Lock screen</b> &gt; <b>Select screen lock</b> &gt; <b>Pattern</b>. The first time you do this, a short tutorial about creating a pattern appears.</li> <li>3. Set it up by drawing your pattern once, then again for confirmation.</li> </ol>



## FAQ

Category	Question	Answer
Sub-Category		
Phone Function Memory	Will I know when my memory is full?	Yes, you'll receive a notification.
Phone Function Language Support	Is it possible to change the language?	<p>The phone has bilingual capabilities.</p> <p><b>To change the language:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap , then tap <b>Settings</b> .</li> <li>2. Tap <b>Language &amp; input</b> &gt; <b>Language</b>.</li> <li>3. Tap the language you want to use.</li> </ol>
Phone Function VPN	How do I set up a VPN?	VPN access configuration is different according to each company. To configure VPN access from your phone, you must obtain the details from your company's network administrator.
Phone Function Screen timeout	My screen turns off after only 15 seconds. How can I change the amount of time before the backlight turns off?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b>  &gt; <b>Display</b> &gt; <b>Screen timeout</b>.</li> <li>2. Tap the preferred screen backlight timeout time.</li> </ol>
Phone Function Audible tap tones	When I dial a number, the phone plays tones. How do I turn this off?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b>  &gt; <b>Sound</b> &gt; <b>Sound effects</b>.</li> <li>2. Tap <b>Dial pad touch tones</b> to remove the checkmark and disable the function.</li> </ol>
Phone Function Wi-Fi and 3G	When Wi-Fi and 3G are both available, which service will my phone use?	<p>When using data, your phone may default to the Wi-Fi connection (if Wi-Fi connectivity on your phone is set to On). However, there will be no notification when your phone switches from one to the other.</p> <p>To know which data connection is being used, view the 3G or Wi-Fi icon in the Status Bar (at the top of your screen).</p>

Category Sub-Category	Question	Answer
Phone Function Home screen	Is it possible to remove an app from the Home screen?	Yes. Touch and hold the icon until the trash can icon appears at the top of the screen. Then, without lifting your finger, drag the icon to the trash can and lift your finger.
Phone Function Application	I downloaded an app and it causes a lot of errors. How do I remove it?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b>  &gt; <b>Apps</b>.</li> <li>2. Scroll to the <b>DOWNLOADED</b> apps tab, then tap the app to uninstall.</li> <li>3. Tap <b>Uninstall</b> and <b>OK</b> to confirm.</li> </ol>
Phone Function Charging	Is it possible to charge my phone using the USB Cable without installing the necessary USB driver?	Yes, the USB Cable will allow the battery to be charged by your PC whether or not the necessary drivers have been installed on the PC.
Phone Function Ringtones	Can I use music files for my ringtone?	<p>Yes. After saving a music file you can use it for your ringtone.</p> <p>Touch and hold a song in a library list. Tap <b>Set as ringtone</b> in the Context menu that appears.</p>
Phone Function Alarm	Will my alarm be audible or will it go off if the phone is turned off?	No, this is not supported.
Phone Function Alarm	If my Ringer Volume is set to Off or Vibrate, will I hear my Alarm?	From the <b>Alarm</b> tab in the <b>Alarm/Clock</b> app, tap the <b>Menu</b> icon  > <b>Settings</b> . Checkmark <b>Alarm in silent mode</b> .
Phone Spec Band	Which wireless bands are supported by the phone?	Your phone is able to operate on the GSM (850MHz, 900MHz, 1800MHz, 1900MHz), UMTS (850MHz, 1900MHz) bands.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

# FAQ

Category	Question	Answer
Sub-Category		
Recovery Solution Factory Reset	How do I perform a factory reset?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the Home screen, tap  &gt; <b>Apps</b> tab (if necessary) &gt; <b>Settings</b>  &gt; <b>Backup &amp; reset</b> &gt; <b>Factory data reset</b>.</li> <li>2. Read the warning, then tap <b>Reset phone</b>.</li> <li>3. Tap <b>Delete all</b> and <b>OK</b> to confirm.</li> </ol> <p><b>Attention:</b> If a factory reset is performed, all installed apps and user data will be erased. Please remember to back up any important data before performing a factory reset.</p>

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## For your safety

The highest SAR value for this model phone when tested for use at the ear is 1.08 W/Kg (1g) and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.95 W/Kg (1g) (body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).

While there may be differences between SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the government requirement for safe exposure.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> after searching on FCC ID ZNFL15G.

- To reduce risk of fire or burns, do not expose to temperature above 50°C (122°F), or dispose of in fire.
- To reduce risk of fire or burns, do not dispose of in fire or water.
- Do not disassemble or open crush, bend or deform, puncture or shred.
- There is a danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. To reduce risk of fire or burns, do not disassemble, crush, puncture, short external contacts, expose to temperature above 50°C (122°F), or dispose of in fire or water. Keep this product away from excessive moisture and extreme temperatures. Keep the battery or device dry and away from water or any liquid as it may cause a short circuit.
- Avoid using your phone near strong electromagnetic sources, such as microwave ovens, sound speakers, TV and radio.



## For your safety

- Use only original manufacturer-approved accessories, or accessories that do not contain any metal. Please only use an approved charging accessory to charge your LG phone. Improper handling of the Accessory/Charger Port, as well as the use of an incompatible charger, may cause damage to your phone and void the warranty.
- Only use the approved battery charger. Otherwise, you may cause serious damage to your phone.

## FCC Hearing-Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices

On July 10, 2003, the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Report and Order in WT Docket 01-309 modified the exception of wireless phones under the Hearing Aid Compatibility Act of 1988 (HAC Act) to require digital wireless phones be compatible with hearing-aids. The intent of the HAC Act is to ensure reasonable access to telecommunications services for persons with hearing disabilities.

While some wireless phones are used near some hearing devices (hearing aids and cochlear implants), users may detect a buzzing, humming, or whining noise. Some hearing devices are more immune than others to this interference noise, and phones also vary in the amount of interference they generate.

The wireless telephone industry has developed a rating system for wireless phones, to assist hearing device users to find phones that may be compatible with their hearing devices. Not all phones have been rated. Phones that are rated have the rating on their box or a label located on the box.



The ratings are not guarantees. Results will vary depending on the user’s hearing device and hearing loss. If your hearing device happens to be vulnerable to interference, you may not be able to use a rated phone successfully. Trying out the phone with your hearing device is the best way to evaluate it for your personal needs.

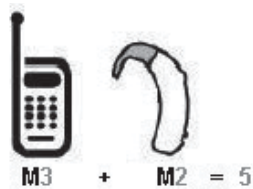
**M-Ratings:** Phones rated M3 or M4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than phones that are not labeled. M4 is the better/ higher of the two ratings.

**T-Ratings:** Phones rated T3 or T4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than phones that are not labeled. T4 is the better/ higher of the two ratings.

Hearing devices may also be rated. Your hearing device manufacturer or hearing health professional may help you find this rating.

Higher ratings mean that the hearing device is relatively immune to interference noise.

The hearing aid and wireless phone rating values are then added together. A sum of 5 is considered acceptable for normal use. A sum of 6 is considered for best use.



In the example to the left, if a hearing aid meets the M2 level rating and the wireless phone meets the M3 level rating, the sum of the two values equal M5. This should provide the hearing aid user with “normal usage” while using their hearing aid with the particular wireless phone. “Normal usage” in this context is

defined as a signal quality that’s acceptable for normal operation.

*cited in OTCU v. Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 received on April 17, 2017*

## For your safety

The M mark is intended to be synonymous with the U mark. The T mark is intended to be synonymous with the UT mark. The M and T marks are recommended by the Alliance for Telecommunications Industries Solutions (ATIS). The U and UT marks are referenced in Section 20.19 of the FCC Rules. The HAC rating and measurement procedure are described in the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19 standard. To ensure that the Hearing Aid Compatibility rating for your phone is maintained, secondary transmitters such as Bluetooth and WLAN components must be disabled during a call.

When you're talking on a cell phone, it's recommended that you turn the BT (Bluetooth) or WLAN mode off for HAC.

### **For information about hearing aids and digital wireless phones**

#### **Wireless Phones and Hearing Aid Accessibility**

<http://www.accesswireless.org/>

#### **Gallaudet University, RERC**

<http://tap.gallaudet.edu/Voice/>

#### **FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility and Volume Control**

<http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/dro/hearing.html>

#### **The Hearing Aid Compatibility FCC Order**

[http://hraunfoss.fcc.gov/edocs\\_public/attachmatch/FCC-03-168A1.pdf](http://hraunfoss.fcc.gov/edocs_public/attachmatch/FCC-03-168A1.pdf)

#### **Hearing Loss Association of America [HLAA]**

<http://hearingloss.org/content/telephones-and-mobile-devices>

*cited in SCIA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## 7.11 Warranty Laws

The following laws govern warranties that arise in retail sales of consumer goods:

- The California Song-Beverly Consumer Warranty Act [CC §§1790 et seq],
- The California Uniform Commercial Code, Division Two [Com C §§2101 et seq], and
- The federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act [15 USC §§2301 et seq; 16 CFR Parts 701– 703].

A typical Magnuson-Moss Act warranty is a written promise that the product is free of defects or a written promise to refund, repair, or replace defective goods. [See 15 USC §2301(6).] Remedies include damages for failing to honor a written warranty or service contract or for violating disclosure provisions. [See 15 USC §2310(d).] Except for some labeling and disclosure requirements, the federal Act does not preempt state law. [See 15 USC §2311.]

The Consumer Warranty Act does not affect the rights and obligations of parties under the state Uniform Commercial Code, except the provisions of the Act prevail over provisions of the Commercial Code when they conflict. [CC §1790.3.]

For purposes of small claims actions, this course will focus on rights and duties under the state laws.



cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

ESPAÑOL



# Guía del usuario

- Las visualizaciones e ilustraciones de la pantalla pueden variar de las que ve en el teléfono.
- Es posible que parte del contenido de esta guía no se aplique al teléfono, en función del software o del proveedor de servicios. Toda la información de este documento está sujeta a cambios sin previo aviso.
- Este teléfono no es adecuado para personas con alguna discapacidad visual ya que cuenta con un teclado en pantalla táctil.
- Copyright ©2015 LG Electronics, Inc. Reservados todos los derechos. LG y el logotipo de LG son marcas comerciales registradas de LG Group y las entidades relacionadas. Las demás marcas comerciales son propiedad de sus respectivos propietarios.
- Google™, Google Maps™, Gmail™, YouTube™, Hangouts™ y Google Play™ son marcas comerciales de Google, Inc.



Filed in: CTIA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

# Contenido

<b>Aviso importante .....</b>	<b>5</b>	Conexión a redes Wi-Fi .....	30
<b>Características del teléfono .....</b>	<b>12</b>	Activar Wi-Fi y conectarse a una red Wi-Fi.....	30
Descripción general del teléfono .....	12	Bluetooth.....	31
Instalación de la batería.....	15	Conectarse a redes privadas virtuales .....	33
Carga del teléfono .....	17	Conexiones de PC con un cable USB.....	34
Uso de la tarjeta de memoria.....	18	<b>Llamadas.....</b>	<b>36</b>
Bloqueo y desbloqueo de la pantalla .....	19	Realizar una llamada.....	36
<b>La pantalla principal.....</b>	<b>20</b>	Llamar a los contactos.....	36
Sugerencias sobre la pantalla táctil..	20	Responder y rechazar una llamada ..	36
Pantalla principal .....	21	Cuando la pantalla está bloqueada..	36
Personalizar la pantalla principal ..	22	Ajuste del volumen durante la llamada .....	37
<b>Notificaciones.....</b>	<b>23</b>	Hacer una segunda llamada .....	37
Cómo acceder a las notificaciones ..	24	Ver los registros de llamadas .....	38
Ajustes rápidos.....	24	Ajustes de llamada .....	38
Iconos de notificaciones en la Barra de estado .....	25	<b>Contactos.....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Introducción de texto .....</b>	<b>27</b>	Buscar un contacto.....	39
Introducir caracteres especiales.....	27	Agregar un nuevo contacto.....	39
<b>Configurar la cuenta de Google .....</b>	<b>28</b>	Contactos favoritos.....	40
<b>Conexión a redes y dispositivos.....</b>	<b>30</b>	Crear un grupo .....	40
Wi-Fi .....	30		



<b>Mensajería .....</b>	<b>41</b>	<b>Funciones Únicas de LG .....</b>	<b>52</b>
Enviar un mensaje .....	41	Modo invitado.....	52
Modo de vista para la aplicación		Knock Code .....	53
Mensajes.....	42	KnockON .....	53
Cambiar los ajustes de su mensaje..	42	QuickMemo+.....	54
<b>Correo electrónico .....</b>	<b>43</b>	Usar las opciones de la barra de	
Administración de una cuenta		herramientas de QuickMemo+ .....	55
de email .....	43	Opciones del menú de	
Trabajar con las carpetas de cuenta.	44	QuickMemo+ .....	56
Redactar y enviar correos		Para salir de la función	
electrónicos.....	44	QuickMemo+ .....	57
<b>Cámara y Video.....</b>	<b>45</b>	Ver las notas guardadas.....	57
Conocer el visor.....	45	<b>Multimedia .....</b>	<b>58</b>
Usar los ajustes .....	46	Galería.....	58
Tomar una foto .....	47	Ver las fotos .....	58
Después de que haya tomado la		Reproducción de videos .....	59
foto.....	47	Editar fotos.....	59
Ver las fotos y videos guardados.....	49	Borrar imágenes.....	59
Cómo grabar un video.....	50	Establecer una foto como	
Después de grabar un video .....	51	fondo de pantalla .....	60
Ver los videos guardados .....	51	Videos .....	60
Ajustar el volumen mientras		Reproducción de un video .....	60
reproduce un video.....	51	Música .....	61
		Reproducir una canción .....	61

*Not cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Contenido

<b>Herramientas .....</b>	<b>64</b>	Sincronización con otros dispositivos .....	72
Definir una alarma .....	64	Acceder a favoritos .....	72
Uso de la calculadora.....	64		
Agregar un evento al calendario.....	65		
Tareas .....	66		
Grabadora de voz.....	66		
Grabar sonido o voz .....	66		
Polaris Office .....	67		
Google+ .....	67		
Búsqueda de voz .....	68		
Descargas .....	68		
<b>Navegar la web .....</b>	<b>69</b>		
Navegador .....	69		
Cómo utilizar la barra de herramientas del navegador .....	69		
Ver las páginas web.....	70		
Abrir una página.....	70		
Búsqueda por voz en la web.....	70		
Favoritos .....	70		
Historial.....	71		
<b>Chrome .....</b>	<b>71</b>		
Ver las páginas web.....	71		
Abrir una página.....	71		
Búsqueda por voz en la web.....	71		
		<b>Configuración .....</b>	<b>73</b>
		Acceso al menú de configuración ....	73
		Ajustes de redes inalámbricas .....	73
		Ajustes de dispositivo .....	75
		Ajustes personales.....	81
		Ajustes de sistema .....	86
		<b>Actualización del software del teléfono.....</b>	<b>92</b>
		<b>Accesorios .....</b>	<b>94</b>
		<b>Preguntas frecuentes .....</b>	<b>95</b>
		<b>Para su seguridad.....</b>	<b>101</b>

## Aviso importante



### Por favor, lea esto antes de comenzar a usar su teléfono.

Antes de llevar el teléfono a reparación o llamar a un representante del servicio técnico, compruebe si alguno de los problemas que presenta el teléfono se describe en esta sección.

### 1. Memoria del teléfono

Cuando hay menos de 10MB de espacio disponible en la memoria del teléfono, el teléfono no puede recibir mensajes nuevos. Deberá comprobar la memoria del teléfono y borrar algunos datos, como aplicaciones o mensajes, para contar con más espacio en la memoria.

#### Para desinstalar aplicaciones:

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Aplicaciones**.
- 2 Cuando aparezcan todas las aplicaciones, desplácese y seleccione la aplicación que desee desinstalar.
- 3 Toque **Desinstalar** y luego toque **OK** para confirmar.

### 2. Optimizar la vida útil de la batería

Prolongue la vida útil de la batería entre cargas apagando las funciones que no necesite ejecutar constantemente en segundo plano. Puede controlar la forma en que las aplicaciones y los recursos consumen la energía de la batería.

## Aviso importante

### Extender la vida útil de la batería:

- Desactive las comunicaciones de radio que no use. Si no usa Wi-Fi, Bluetooth o Ubicación, desactívelos.
- Disminuya el brillo de la pantalla y fije un límite de tiempo de pantalla más corto.
- Desactive la sincronización automática de Gmail, Calendario, Contactos y otras aplicaciones.
- Algunas de las aplicaciones descargadas pueden reducir la energía de la batería.

### Para comprobar el nivel de energía de la batería:

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Acerca del teléfono** > **Batería**.

El estado de la batería (cargando o descargando) y el nivel de la batería (porcentaje cargado) se muestran en la pantalla.

### Para monitorear y controlar cómo se está usando la energía de la batería:

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Acerca del teléfono** > **Batería** > **Uso de la batería**.

El tiempo de uso de la batería aparece en la pantalla. Le indica cuánto tiempo ha pasado desde la última vez que conectó el teléfono a una fuente de alimentación o, si está conectado, cuánto tiempo el teléfono estuvo por última vez utilizando la batería. La pantalla muestra las aplicaciones o los servicios que usan la energía de la batería, ordenados desde los que usan más a los que usan menos.

### 3. Antes de instalar una aplicación y un sistema operativo de código abierto



#### ADVERTENCIA

Si instala y usa un sistema operativo distinto al proporcionado por el fabricante podría provocar que el teléfono no funcione correctamente. Además, el teléfono ya no estará cubierto por la garantía.

#### ADVERTENCIA

Para proteger el teléfono y los datos personales, solo descargue aplicaciones provenientes de fuentes de confianza, como Play Store. Si existen aplicaciones mal instaladas en el teléfono, es posible que no funcione normalmente o que se produzca un error grave. Debe desinstalar esas aplicaciones y todos los datos y ajustes asociados del teléfono.

### 4. Cómo usar el bloqueo de pantalla

Establezca un bloqueo de pantalla para proteger su teléfono y evitar el uso no autorizado. Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Bloqueo de pantalla** > **Seleccionar bloqueo de pantalla** > **Knock Code, Patrón, PIN o Contraseña**. Algunas opciones le pedirán crear un PIN de respaldo como medida de seguridad, en caso de que olvide su patrón de bloqueo de pantalla.

## Aviso importante

**Precaución:** Cree una cuenta Google antes de establecer un patrón de bloqueo y recuerde el PIN de respaldo que haya creado mientras crea el patrón de bloqueo de pantalla.

### ADVERTENCIA

#### **Precauciones que debe seguir al usar un bloqueo de pantalla.**

Es muy importante recordar el bloqueo de pantalla que configure. Si usa un bloqueo de pantalla incorrecto 5 veces, no podrá acceder al teléfono. Si usa las 5 oportunidades, puede volver a intentarlo después de 30 segundos.

## 5. Usar la función de Reinicio completo (restablecer valores de fábrica)

Si es necesario restablecer el teléfono a sus ajustes originales, utilice un Reinicio completo para iniciar su teléfono.

### ADVERTENCIA

Si ejecuta un reinicio completo, se eliminarán todas las aplicaciones y los datos de usuario. Antes de realizar ese tipo de reinicio recuerde que debe hacer una copia de seguridad de todos los datos que sean importantes.

- 1 Apague el teléfono.
- 2 Mantenga presionada la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear** + **Tecla de Volumen Inferior** al mismo tiempo.
- 3 Suelte solamente la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear** cuando se muestra el logotipo de LG y luego presione y manténgala presionada de nuevo inmediatamente.
- 4 Cuando aparezca la pantalla de restablecimiento a la configuración de fábrica, suelte todas las teclas.
- 5 Presione la **Tecla de Volumen Inferior** para desplazarse hasta la opción **Yes** (Sí). Luego, presione la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear** para confirmar.
- 6 Presione la **Tecla de Volumen Inferior** para desplazarse hasta la opción **Yes** (Sí) nuevamente. Luego, presione la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear** para confirmar.
- 7 Su teléfono restablece la configuración de fábrica.

## 6. Abrir y alternar aplicaciones

Es fácil realizar varias tareas con Android porque puede mantener más de una aplicación en ejecución al mismo tiempo. No es necesario salir de una aplicación antes de abrir otra. Puede utilizar varias aplicaciones abiertas y cambiar de una a otra. Android gestiona cada aplicación, deteniéndola e iniciándola según sea necesario, para garantizar que las aplicaciones inactivas no consuman recursos innecesariamente.

## Aviso importante

### Para detener las aplicaciones:

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Aplicaciones** > etiqueta **EN EJECUCIÓN**.
- 2 Toque la aplicación que desee y toque **Parar** para detenerla.

## 7. Transferir música, fotos y videos usando Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)

- 1 Conecte el teléfono a la PC usando el cable USB incluido con el teléfono.
- 2 Arrastre la Barra de estado hacia abajo y toque la conexión de USB actual.
- 3 Toque la opción **Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)**.
- 4 Seleccione la opción **Abrir dispositivo para ver archivos** en su PC. Podrá ver el contenido multimedia en la PC y transferir los archivos.
- 5 Copie los archivos desde la PC a la carpeta de la unidad o viceversa.
- 6 Arrastre la Barra de estado hacia abajo y toque **Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)** > **Cargar el teléfono**.
- 7 Desconecte el cable USB del teléfono.

cited in *City of Berkeley v. Wireless Ass'n*, 2017 WL 1615141, at \*17 (N.D. Cal. Apr. 17, 2017)



## 8. Sostenga el teléfono en posición vertical

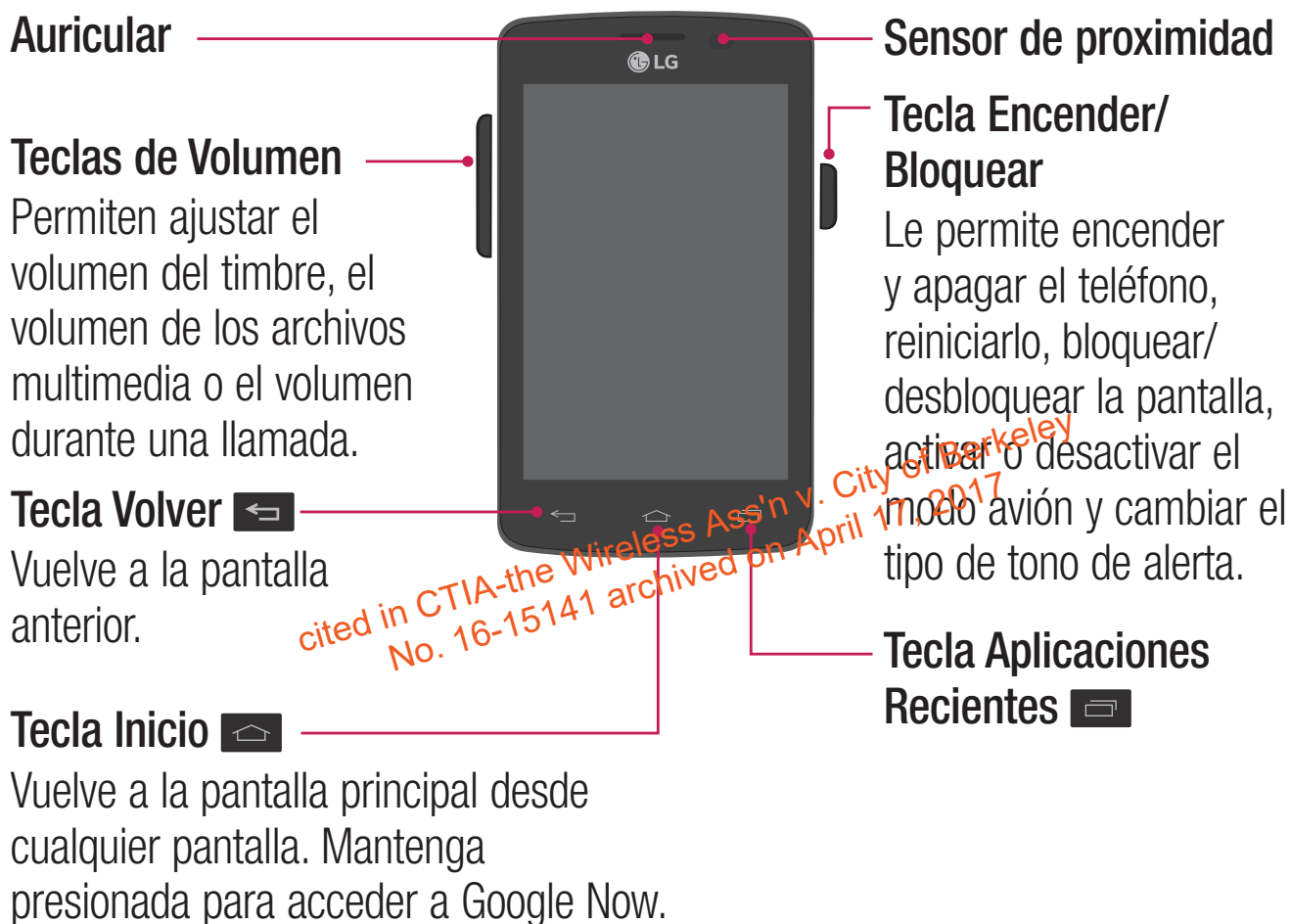
Sostenga el teléfono en posición vertical como lo haría con un teléfono normal. El teléfono cuenta con una antena interna. Tenga cuidado de no rayar o dañar la parte posterior del teléfono, ya que eso podría afectar su rendimiento.

Mientras haga o reciba llamadas o mientras envíe o reciba datos, evite colocar la mano sobre la parte inferior del teléfono, donde se encuentra la antena. Esto podría afectar la calidad de la llamada.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Características del teléfono

## Descripción general del teléfono



### ADVERTENCIA

Si coloca un objeto pesado sobre el teléfono o se sienta sobre él, se pueden dañar la pantalla LCD y las funciones de la pantalla táctil. Cubriendo el sensor de proximidad con una cubierta de protección puede provocar que funcione de forma incorrecta.

### Teclas de Volumen

- **En la pantalla principal:** Controle el volumen del timbre.
- **Durante una llamada:** Controle el volumen del auricular.
- **Mientras se reproduce audio/video:** Controle el volumen continuamente.



Tecla Encender/Bloquear

Toma para auriculares de 3.5 mm

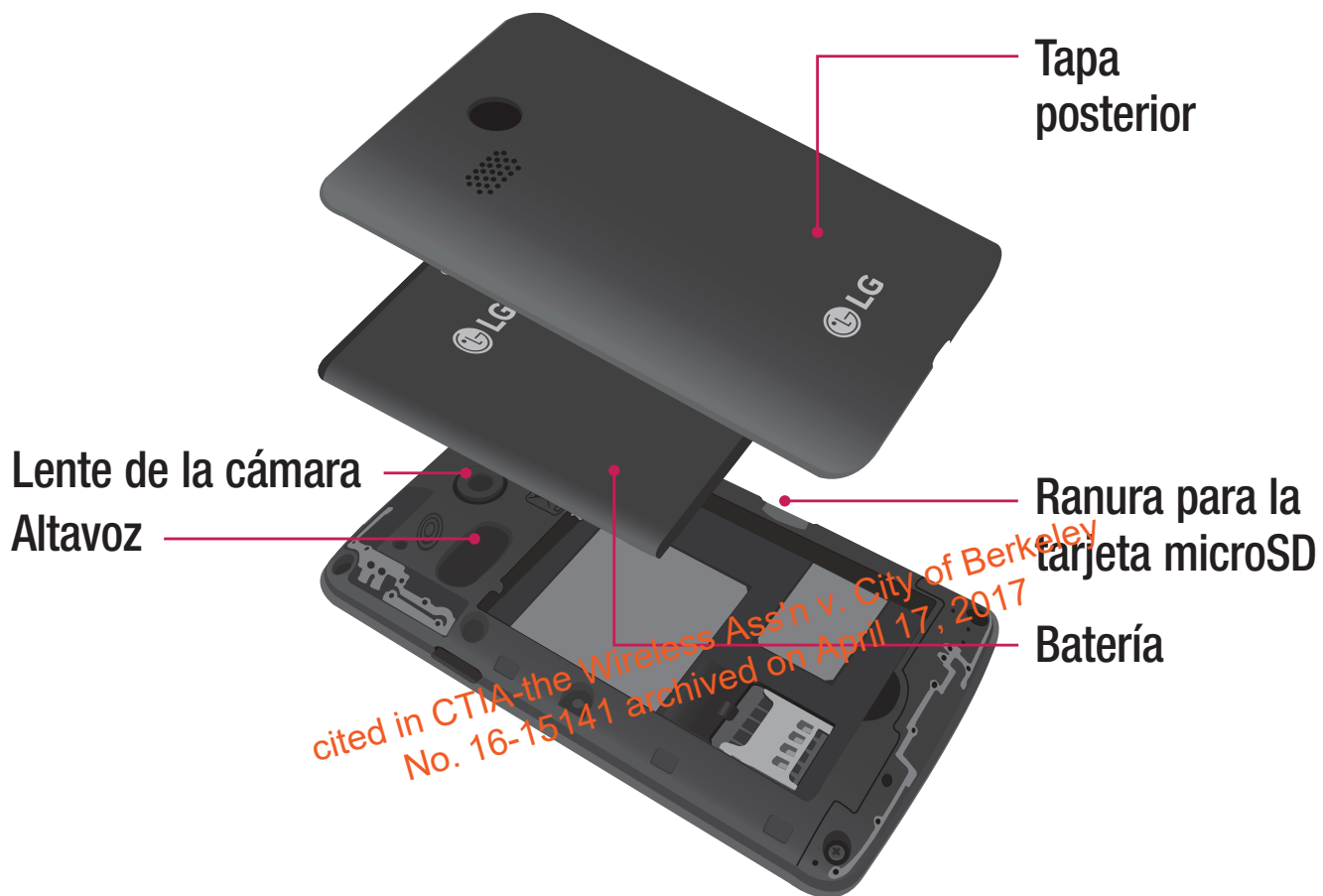


Puerto para Cargador/USB

Micrófono

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Características del teléfono



## Instalación de la batería

Antes de poder usar su nuevo teléfono tendrá que realizar ciertas tareas de configuración, como por ejemplo la instalación y la carga de la batería.

- 1 Para retirar la tapa posterior, sostenga el teléfono firmemente en una mano. Con la otra mano, coloque su uña en el Puerto para Cargador/USB en la parte posterior del teléfono como se muestra en la siguiente ilustración.

**NOTA:** Asegúrese de apagar el teléfono antes de extraer la batería.



## Características del teléfono

- 2** Inserte la batería dentro del compartimiento de batería en el posterior del teléfono. Asegúrese que los conectores dorados estén alineados **1** y presione hacia abajo hasta que encaje en su lugar **2**.



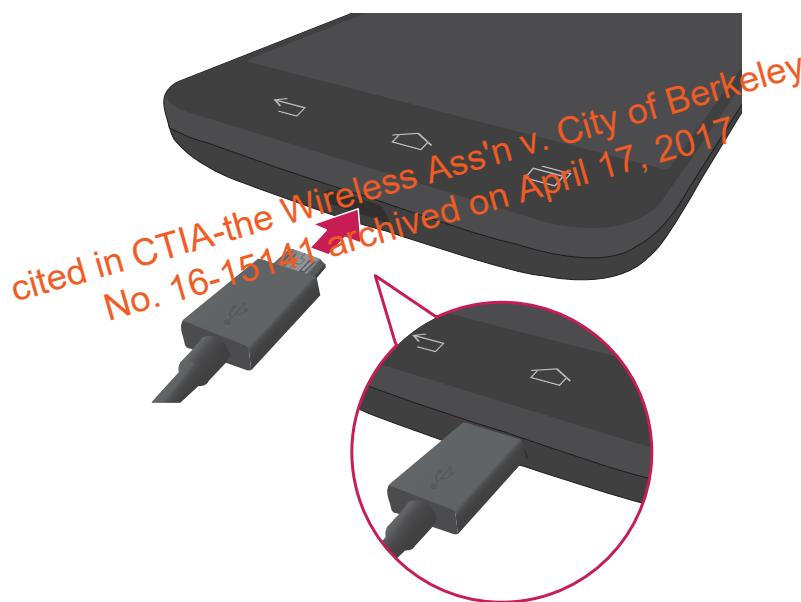
- 3** Alinee la tapa posterior sobre el compartimiento de la batería **1** y presione los bordes externos de la tapa posterior hacia abajo **2**.



## Carga del teléfono

Su teléfono viene con un cable USB y un adaptador de carga. Cargue la batería por completo antes de usar el teléfono por primera vez para mejorar la duración de la batería.

El Puerto para Cargador/USB se encuentra en la parte inferior del teléfono. Inserte un extremo del cable USB en el puerto y conecte el adaptador de carga en un tomacorriente.



### **ADVERTENCIA**

Para evitar daños al Puerto para Cargador/USB y el conector del cable USB, oriente el conector del cable con el puerto antes de insertarlo.

## Características del teléfono

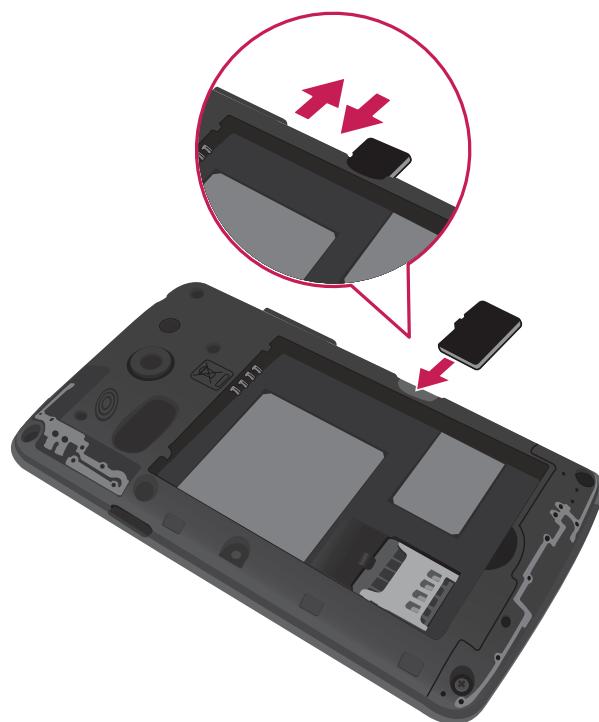
### NOTA:

- No retire la tapa posterior mientras se carga el teléfono.
- Use sólo un cable USB y adaptador de carga aprobado para cargar el teléfono. La manipulación inadecuada del Puerto para Cargador/USB y el uso de un cargador no compatible pueden ocasionarle daños al teléfono y anular la garantía.

## Uso de la tarjeta de memoria

Asegúrese de desactivar la tarjeta SD en el menú Almacenamiento antes de extraerla.

- 1 Retire la tapa posterior.
- 2 Inserte la tarjeta de memoria en la ranura. Asegúrese de que el área de contacto dorada quede orientada hacia abajo.






## Bloqueo y desbloqueo de la pantalla

Si no usa el teléfono durante un tiempo, la pantalla se apaga y bloquea automáticamente. De esta forma, se evita que las teclas se toquen por accidente y se ahorra batería.

Cuando no utilice el teléfono, presione la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear**  para bloquearlo.

Si hay programas ejecutándose cuando bloquea la pantalla, es posible que sigan ejecutándose en modo de bloqueo. Se recomienda que salga de todos los programas antes de ingresar en el modo de bloqueo para evitar cargos innecesarios (como llamadas, acceso a la Web y comunicaciones de datos).

Para reactivar el teléfono, presione la **Tecla Encender/Bloquear** . Aparecerá la pantalla de bloqueo. Toque y deslice la pantalla de bloqueo en cualquier dirección para desbloquear la pantalla. Se abrirá la última pantalla que vio.

Filed in CTIA the Wireless Inst. v. City of Berkeley  
Case No. 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

## La pantalla principal

### Sugerencias sobre la pantalla táctil

A continuación, se incluyen algunos consejos sobre cómo navegar por el teléfono.

**Tocar** – Un solo toque con un dedo para seleccionar elementos, enlaces, accesos directos y letras en el teclado en pantalla.

**Tocar y mantener presionado** – Toque y mantenga presionado un elemento en la pantalla sin levantar el dedo hasta que ocurra una acción. Por ejemplo, para abrir las opciones disponibles de un contacto, mantenga presionado el contacto en la lista de contactos hasta que se abra el menú contextual.

**Arrastrar** – Toque y mantenga presionado un elemento por un momento y, a continuación, sin levantar el dedo, muévelo por la pantalla hasta encontrar la ubicación de destino que desea usar. Puede arrastrar elementos en la pantalla principal para reubicarlos.

**Desplazar o deslizar** – Para desplazar o deslizar, mueva con rapidez el dedo por la superficie de la pantalla, sin detenerse cuando toca la pantalla por primera vez (de lo contrario, arrastrará el elemento en vez de desplazarlo o deslizarlo). Por ejemplo, puede deslizar la pantalla hacia arriba o abajo para desplazarse por una lista, o navegar a través de las diferentes pantallas principales al desplazarse de izquierda a derecha (y viceversa).

**Tocar dos veces** – Toque dos veces para acercar una página web o un mapa. Por ejemplo, toque dos veces rápidamente una sección de una página web para ajustar esa sección de forma que se ajuste al ancho de la pantalla. También puede tocar dos veces para acercar y alejar el zoom al ver una foto y cuando usa mapas.

**Unir y separar los dedos para acercar o alejar la imagen** – Junte el dedo índice y el pulgar o sepárelos para acercar o alejar cuando use el navegador, consulte mapas o vea fotografías.

**Rotar la pantalla** – Desde muchas aplicaciones y menús, la orientación de la pantalla se ajusta a la orientación física del teléfono.

#### NOTA:

- Para seleccionar un elemento, toque el centro del icono.
- No ejerza demasiada presión; la pantalla táctil es lo suficientemente sensible para detectar un toque suave, pero firme.
- Utilice la punta del dedo para tocar la opción que desea. Tenga cuidado de no tocar otras teclas.

## Pantalla principal



Simplemente pase el dedo hacia la izquierda o hacia la derecha para ver los paneles de la pantalla principal. Puede personalizar cada panel con aplicaciones precargadas/descargadas, widgets y fondos de pantalla.

Las Teclas rápidas están disponibles en la parte inferior de la pantalla principal. Las Teclas rápidas le brindan acceso sencillo en un solo toque a las funciones que más utiliza.

 Toque el icono **Teléfono** para abrir el teclado de marcación y realizar una llamada.

 Toque el icono **Contactos** para abrir los contactos.

## La pantalla principal

-  Toque el icono **Mensaje** para acceder la aplicación de mensajería, donde puede ver y crear mensajes de texto y multimedia.
-  Toque el icono **Aplicaciones** para ver todas las aplicaciones instaladas. Para abrir cualquier aplicación, simplemente toque el icono en la lista de aplicaciones.

**NOTA:** Para agregar un icono, arrástrelo a la barra de Teclas rápidas y suéltelo. Para eliminar un icono, arrástrelo fuera de la barra de Teclas rápidas.

## Personalizar la pantalla principal

Puede personalizar la pantalla principal agregando aplicaciones, descargas, widgets o fondos de pantalla. Para utilizar el teléfono con mayor comodidad, agregue sus widgets favoritos a la pantalla principal.

### Para añadir elementos a la pantalla principal:

- 1 Toque y mantenga presionada una parte vacía de la pantalla principal.
- 2 Toque la etiqueta deseada. Elija entre **Aplicaciones** y **Widgets**.
- 3 Arrastre el icono de aplicación deseado al lugar de destino y levante su dedo.

### Para eliminar un elemento de la pantalla principal:

- Mantenga presionado el icono que desea eliminar, arrástrelo hasta  y luego suéltelo.

**SUGERENCIA** Para añadir un icono de aplicación a la pantalla principal desde la pantalla de aplicaciones, toque y mantenga presionada la aplicación que desea añadir y arrástrela hacia donde desee dejarla.

### SUGERENCIA Usar carpetas

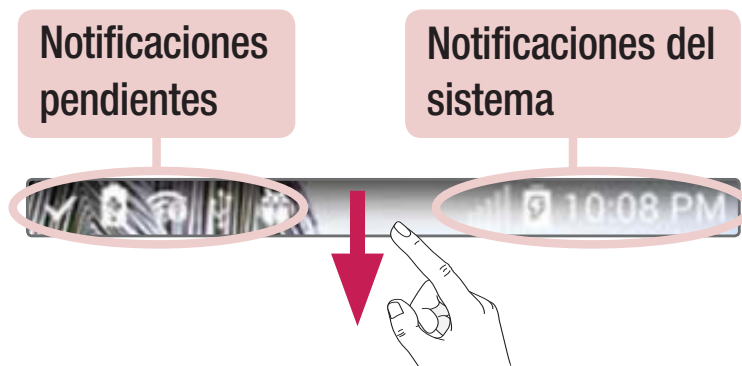
Puede combinar varios iconos de aplicación en una carpeta para mantener un orden. Suelte un icono sobre otro icono en una pantalla principal y se creará una carpeta con ambos iconos dentro de ella.

## Notificaciones

Las notificaciones le alertan sobre la llegada de nuevos mensajes, eventos del calendario y alarmas, así como también sobre eventos en curso, como descargas de video.


Desde el Panel de notificaciones, puede ver el estado actual de su teléfono y las notificaciones pendientes.

Cuando llega una notificación, su icono aparece en la parte superior de la pantalla. Los iconos de notificaciones pendientes aparecen a la izquierda y los iconos del sistema que muestran cuestiones como el Wi-Fi o la carga de la batería, a la derecha.



## La pantalla principal



### Cómo acceder a las notificaciones

Deslice la Barra de estado hacia abajo para abrir el Panel de notificaciones. Para cerrar el Panel de notificaciones, deslice el panel hacia arriba o toque la **Tecla Volver** .

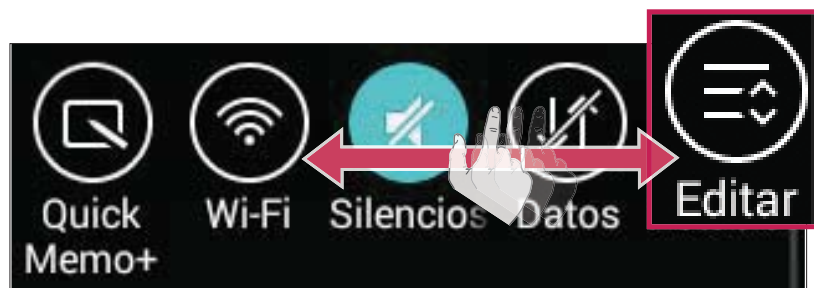
### Ajustes rápidos

Use los Ajustes rápidos para alternar con rapidez los ajustes de función como Wi-Fi, administrar el brillo de la pantalla y más. Para acceder a los Ajustes rápidos, abra el Panel de notificaciones. La barra de Ajustes rápidos se encuentra en la parte superior del Panel de notificaciones.

### Para reorganizar los elementos de Ajustes rápidos en el Panel de notificaciones

Deslice la barra de Ajustes rápidos hacia la izquierda y toque tap **Editar** . Mantenga presionado  junto a los elementos que quiera mover y arrástrelos hacia la ubicación deseada. Toque la casilla de verificación al lado de cada elemento para agregarlos o eliminarlos de la barra de Ajustes rápidos.

**NOTA:** Mantenga presionado un icono en la barra de Ajustes rápidos para acceder directamente a su menú de ajustes.



## Iconos de notificaciones en la Barra de estado









Los iconos de notificaciones aparecen en la Barra de estado en la parte superior de la pantalla, para informar sobre llamadas perdidas, nuevos mensajes, eventos del calendario, estado del teléfono y más.



Los iconos que aparecen en la tabla siguiente son algunos de los más comunes.

Icono	Descripción	Icono	Descripción
	Sin señal		Batería cargada por completo
	Modo avión		Batería en carga
	Conectado a una red Wi-Fi		Descargando datos
	Auricular alámbrico (con micrófono) conectado		Cargando datos
	Auricular alámbrico (sin micrófono) conectado		Llamada en curso
	Adquiriendo GPS		Los datos se están sincronizando
	Llamada perdida		Nuevo mensaje de Gmail

## La pantalla principal

Icono	Descripción	Icono	Descripción
	Bluetooth está activado		Advertencia del sistema
	Nuevo mensaje de Hangouts		Alarma activada
	Nuevo correo de voz		Nuevo mensaje de texto o multimedia
	Timbre silenciado		Se está reproduciendo una canción
	Ahorro de energía activado		El teléfono está conectado a la PC mediante el cable USB

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 16, 2017*








**NOTA:** Las ubicaciones de los iconos en la Barra de estado puede ser diferente, según las funciones, características y aplicaciones en uso.



## Introducción de texto

Puede escribir texto utilizando el teclado en pantalla. El teclado en pantalla aparece automáticamente en la pantalla cuando necesita introducir texto. Para mostrar el teclado en forma manual, toque el campo de texto en donde desea introducir texto.

### Uso del teclado e introducción de texto

-  Toque esta tecla una vez para poner en mayúscula la próxima letra que escriba. Toque dos veces para escribir todas las letras en mayúscula.
-   Toque esta tecla para cambiar al teclado de números y símbolos.
-  Toque para acceder a la configuración del Teclado LG. Mantenga presionada para acceder al modo de entrada por voz.
-  Toque esta tecla para introducir un espacio.
-  Toque esta tecla para crear una nueva línea en el campo de texto.
-  Toque este icono para eliminar el carácter anterior.

### Introducir caracteres especiales




El Teclado LG le permite introducir caracteres especiales (por ejemplo "á") al introducir texto.

Por ejemplo, para ingresar "á", mantenga presionada la tecla "a". Cuando se muestre la opción emergente con sus caracteres adicionales, deslice el dedo sobre la "á", y levante el dedo para ingresarla.

## Configurar la cuenta de Google




La primera vez que abra una aplicación de Google en el teléfono, se le solicitará que inicie sesión con su cuenta de Google. Si no tiene una cuenta de Google, se le pedirá que cree una.

### Crear una cuenta de Google

- 1 En la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes** .
- 2 Toque **Cuentas y sincronización** > **Agregar cuenta** > **Google** > **Nueva** para iniciar el asistente de configuración de la cuenta de Google.
- 3 Toque un campo de texto para abrir el teclado e introduzca su nombre y el nombre de usuario de su cuenta de Google. Al ingresar texto, puede tocar **Sig.** en el teclado para ir al siguiente campo de texto.
- 4 Cuando haya terminado de introducir su nombre y su nombre de usuario, toque el icono Siguiente . El teléfono se comunicará con los servidores de Google y verificará la disponibilidad de nombre de usuario.
- 5 Ingrese y vuelva a ingresar su contraseña. Luego siga las instrucciones e ingrese la información obligatoria y opcional sobre la cuenta. Espere mientras el servidor crea su cuenta.

CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## Iniciar sesión en la cuenta de Google

- 1 En la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Cuentas y sincronización** > **Agregar cuenta** > **Google** > **Existente**.
- 2 Escriba su dirección de correo electrónico y su contraseña, y luego toque el icono **Siguiente** .
- 3 Una vez configurada la cuenta de Google en el teléfono, este se sincronizará automáticamente con la cuenta web de Google (según sus ajustes de sincronización).

Después de iniciar sesión, puede utilizar Gmail y Google Play, respaldar sus ajustes en los servidores Google y aprovechar los demás servicios de Google en su teléfono.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## Conexión a redes y dispositivos

### Wi-Fi

Con Wi-Fi, puede utilizar el acceso a Internet de alta velocidad dentro de la cobertura del punto de acceso (AP) inalámbrico. Disfrute de la conexión inalámbrica a Internet por Wi-Fi sin cargos extras.




### Conexión a redes Wi-Fi

Para usar Wi-Fi en el teléfono, necesita acceder al punto de acceso inalámbrico o "hotspot". Algunos puntos de acceso están abiertos y basta con conectarse a ellos. Otros están ocultos o usan otras funciones de seguridad y debe configurar el teléfono para poder conectarse a ellos.

Desconecte la conexión Wi-Fi cuando no la esté utilizando para aumentar la duración de la batería.

**NOTA:** Si no está dentro de una zona Wi-Fi o ha configurado Wi-Fi en desactivado, es posible que el operador móvil aplique cargos adicionales para el uso de datos móviles.

### Activar Wi-Fi y conectarse a una red Wi-Fi

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Wi-Fi**.
- 2 Toque el botón  para activar Wi-Fi y comenzar a detectar las redes de Wi-Fi disponibles.
  - Las redes protegidas se muestran con un icono de candado.
- 3 Toque una red para conectarse a ella.

- Si la red está protegida, se le solicitará que introduzca la contraseña u otras credenciales. (Consulte con su administrador de red para obtener más detalles).

**4** La Barra de estado muestra iconos que indican el estado de Wi-Fi.

## Bluetooth

Bluetooth permite compartir datos con otros dispositivos que tengan Bluetooth y conectar auriculares Bluetooth.

### NOTA:


- LG no se responsabiliza por la pérdida, la interceptación o el uso incorrecto de los datos enviados o recibidos a través de la función inalámbrica de Bluetooth.
- Asegúrese siempre de que los dispositivos con los que comparte información, o de los que recibe datos, son fiables y seguros. Si hay obstáculos entre los dispositivos, la distancia de funcionamiento puede reducirse.
- Algunos dispositivos, especialmente los que no han sido probados ni aprobados por Bluetooth SIG, pueden ser incompatibles con su teléfono.


### Activar Bluetooth y vincular el teléfono con un dispositivo Bluetooth

Debe vincular el teléfono con otro dispositivo antes de conectarlo a éste.

- 1** Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Bluetooth**.

## Conexión a redes y dispositivos


- 2 Toque el botón  para activar Bluetooth.
- 3 Toque la casilla de verificación al lado del nombre de su teléfono para que otros dispositivos con Bluetooth puedan verlo.

**NOTA:** Para seleccionar el tiempo que estará visible el teléfono, toque el icono **Menú**  > **Tiempo visible**.

- 4 Se mostrará una lista de los dispositivos disponibles. Elija de la lista el dispositivo con el que desea vincularlo.
- 5 Dependiendo del tipo de dispositivo, deberá introducir códigos coincidentes, confirmar códigos coincidentes o los dispositivos se vinculan automáticamente. Una vez que se complete la vinculación, su teléfono se conectará con el otro dispositivo.

**NOTA:** Algunos dispositivos, especialmente los auriculares o kits de manos libres para autos, pueden tener un PIN de Bluetooth fijo, por ejemplo, 0000. Si el otro dispositivo tiene un PIN, se le pedirá que lo ingrese.

### Enviar datos a través de Bluetooth

- 1 Seleccione un archivo o elemento, como un contacto, evento de calendario, nota o archivo multimedia, de una aplicación adecuada o de la aplicación de **Descargas** .
- 2 Seleccione la opción para enviar datos a través de Bluetooth.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Bergecy  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

**NOTA:** El método para seleccionar una opción puede variar según el tipo de datos.

**3** Busque y vincule con un dispositivo Bluetooth (si es necesario).

### Recibir datos a través de Bluetooth

- 1** Vincule ambos dispositivos y envíe un archivo desde el otro dispositivo al suyo.
- 2** Toque **Aceptar** para confirmar que desea recibir datos del dispositivo.

## Conectarse a redes privadas virtuales

Las redes privadas virtuales (VPN) le permiten conectarse a los recursos dentro de una red local segura, desde fuera de esa red.

### Para agregar una VPN

- 1** Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Más...** > **VPN**.

**NOTA:** Debe configurar un bloqueo de pantalla para utilizar VPN.

- 2** Toque **Agregar red VPN**.
- 3** Toque el tipo de red privada virtual que desea agregar.
- 4** En la pantalla que se abre, siga las instrucciones del administrador de red para configurar cada componente de la configuración de la VPN.
- 5** Toque **Guardar**. La VPN se agregará a la lista en la pantalla de configuración de VPN.

## Conexión a redes y dispositivos

### Conexiones de PC con un cable USB

Aprenda a conectar su teléfono a una PC usando los diferentes modos de conexión USB.

#### Transferir música, fotos y videos usando Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)

- 1 Conecte el teléfono a una computadora con el cable USB que viene con el teléfono.
- 2 Arrastre la Barra de estado hacia abajo y toque la conexión de USB actual.
- 3 Toque la opción **Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)**.

#### Sincronización con Windows Media Player

Asegúrese de que Windows Media Player esté instalado en la PC.

- 1 Use el cable USB para conectar el teléfono a una PC en la que Windows Media Player esté instalado.
- 2 Seleccione la opción **Dispositivo multimedia (MTP)**. Una vez conectado, aparecerá una ventana emergente en la PC.
- 3 Abra Windows Media Player para sincronizar los archivos de música.
- 4 Edite o introduzca el nombre de su teléfono en la ventana emergente (de ser necesario).
- 5 Seleccione y arrastre los archivos de música que desee a la lista de sincronización.
- 6 Comience la sincronización.
  - Deben cumplirse los siguientes requisitos para sincronizar con Windows Media Player.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017







<b>Elementos</b>	<b>Requisitos</b>
Sistema operativo	Microsoft Windows XP SP2, Vista o superior
Versión de Windows Media Player	Windows Media Player 10 o superior

- Si la versión de Windows Media Player es inferior a 10, instale la versión 10 o superior.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



# Llamadas

## Realizar una llamada

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir el teclado de marcación.
- 2 Introduzca el número con el teclado de marcación. Para borrar un dígito, toque .
- 3 Toque  para realizar una llamada.
- 4 Para terminar una llamada, toque .



**SUGERENCIA** Para introducir "+" para realizar llamadas internacionales, mantenga presionada .

## Llamar a los contactos

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir la lista de contactos.
- 2 Desplácese por la lista de contactos o toque el cuadro **Buscar contactos** e introduzca el nombre de los contactos. También puede desplazarse por la barra alfabética ubicada del lado derecho de la pantalla.
- 3 En la lista, toque , junto al contacto deseado, para realizar la llamada.

## Responder y rechazar una llamada

### Cuando la pantalla está bloqueada

- Deslice  en cualquier dirección para responder a una llamada entrante.
- Deslice  en cualquier dirección para rechazar una llamada entrante.





**SUGERENCIA Rechazar con mensaje**

Puede enviar un mensaje rápidamente utilizando esta función. Es útil si necesita rechazar una llamada durante una reunión.

## Ajuste del volumen durante la llamada

Para ajustar el volumen durante una llamada entrante, utilice las Teclas de Volumen ubicadas en el lado izquierdo del teléfono.

## Hacer una segunda llamada

- 1 Durante la primera llamada, toque el icono **Menú** , toque **Agregar llamada** y marque el número. También puede tocar **Registros** para ir a la lista de números marcados recientemente o tocar **Contactos** para buscar contactos y seleccionar el contacto al que desea llamar.
- 2 Toque  para realizar la llamada.
- 3 La primera llamada quedará en espera.
- 4 Toque  si quiere iniciar una llamada en conferencia
- 5 Para finalizar las llamadas activas, toque  **Finalizar**.

**NOTA:** Se le cobrará cada llamada que realice.


**SUGERENCIA** Toque **Administrar conferencia** para finalizar o separar llamadas individuales de la llamada de conferencia.

## Llamadas

### Ver los registros de llamadas



Desde la pantalla principal, toque  y elija la etiqueta **Registros**. Se muestra una lista completa de todas las llamadas realizadas, recibidas o perdidas.

#### SUGERENCIA

- Toque cualquier entrada de registro de llamadas para ver la fecha, hora y duración de la llamada.
- Toque el icono **Menú**  y luego toque **Borrar todo** para borrar todos los elementos grabados o toque **Borrar** para borrar elementos individuales.

### Ajustes de llamada

Puede configurar las opciones de llamada del teléfono, como desvío de llamadas y otras funciones especiales ofrecidas por su proveedor.


- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque .
- 2 Toque el icono **Menú** .
- 3 Toque **Ajustes de llamada** y elija las opciones que desee ajustar.

*cited in [CIPA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley](#)  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*





# Contactos

Puede agregar contactos al teléfono y sincronizarlos con los contactos de la cuenta de Google u otras cuentas que admitan la sincronización de contactos.

## Buscar un contacto

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir la lista de contactos.
- 2 Toque el cuadro **Buscar contactos** e introduzca el nombre de los contactos. También puede desplazarse por la barra alfabética ubicada del lado derecho de la pantalla.

## Agregar un nuevo contacto


- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  e introduzca el número del nuevo contacto.
- 2 Toque el icono **Menú**  > **Agregar a Contactos** > **Nuevo contacto**.
- 3 Si desea agregar una foto al nuevo contacto, toque . Elija entre **Tomar una foto** o **Seleccionar desde la galería**.
- 4 Toque  en la parte superior de la pantalla y seleccione la cuenta donde desea guardar el contacto.
- 5 Toque una categoría de información de contacto e introduzca los detalles acerca del contacto.
- 6 Toque **Guardar**.

# Contactos


## Contactos favoritos

Puede clasificar los contactos a los que llama con frecuencia como favoritos.



### Cómo agregar un contacto a los favoritos

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir la lista de contactos.
- 2 Toque un contacto para ver sus detalles.
- 3 Toque la estrella en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla. La estrella se volverá en color amarillo.

### Eliminar un contacto de la lista de favoritos

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir la lista de contactos.
- 2 Toque la etiqueta **Favoritos** y elija un contacto para ver sus detalles.
- 3 Toque la estrella en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla. La estrella se volverá en color gris y el contacto se elimina de los favoritos.

## Crear un grupo



- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  para abrir la lista de contactos.
- 2 Toque la etiqueta **Grupos** y luego toque el icono **Menú**  > **Nuevo grupo**.
- 3 Introduzca un nombre para el nuevo grupo. También puede establecer un tono de timbre para el grupo recientemente creado.
- 4 Toque **Agregar miembros** para agregar contactos al grupo.
- 5 Toque **Guardar** para guardar el grupo.

**NOTA:** Si elimina un grupo, no se borran los contactos asignados a ese grupo. Continuarán almacenados en la lista de contactos.

## Mensajería


El teléfono combina mensajes de texto y multimedia en un único menú intuitivo y fácil de usar.

### Enviar un mensaje

- 1 Toque  en la pantalla principal y toque  para redactar un mensaje nuevo.
- 2 Ingrese el nombre de un contacto o un número de contacto en el campo **Para**. Al introducir el nombre del contacto, aparecerán los contactos coincidentes. Puede tocar un destinatario sugerido. Puede agregar más de un contacto.

**NOTA:** Se le cobrará cada mensaje que envía a todas las personas.

- 3 Toque el campo de texto y comience a redactar su mensaje.
- 4 Toque el icono **Menú**  para acceder las opciones de mensaje.

**SUGERENCIA** Puede tocar el icono  para adjuntar el archivo que desee compartir.

- 5 Toque **Enviar** para enviar su mensaje.

## Mensajería

### ADVERTENCIA

- El límite de 160 caracteres puede variar de un país a otro según el idioma y la forma en que esté codificado el mensaje de texto.
- Si se agrega un archivo de imagen, video o audio a un mensaje de texto, se convertirá automáticamente en un mensaje multimedia y se le cobrarán los cargos correspondientes.

## Modo de vista para la aplicación Mensajes

Los mensajes no leídos se ubican en la parte superior. Los mensajes que intercambie con otra persona aparecen al inicio de conversaciones y en orden cronológico para que pueda tener una práctica vista general de sus conversaciones.

## Cambiar los ajustes de su mensaje

Su teléfono está preconfigurado para el envío de mensajes. Esto le permite enviar mensajes de inmediato. Puede cambiar los ajustes según sus preferencias.

- Abra la aplicación **Mensajes** y toque el icono **Menú**  > **Ajustes**.



## Correo electrónico

Puede usar la aplicación E-mail para leer el correo electrónico de servicios como Gmail. La aplicación E-mail admite los siguientes tipos de cuentas: POP3, IMAP y Exchange.

El proveedor de servicios o el administrador del sistema pueden proporcionarle los datos de configuración de las cuentas que necesita.

### Administración de una cuenta de email

La primera vez que abra la aplicación E-mail, se abrirá un asistente de configuración que lo guiará para configurar una cuenta de email.

Después de la configuración inicial, la aplicación E-mail muestra el contenido de su Buzón de entrada. Si agrega más de una cuenta, puede alternar entre una cuenta y otra.


#### Para agregar una cuenta de correo electrónico:

- Abra la aplicación **E-mail** y toque el icono **Menú**  > **Ajustes** > **Agregar cuenta**.

#### Para cambiar la configuración de una cuenta de correo electrónico:

- Abra la aplicación **E-mail** y toque el icono **Menú**  > **Ajustes**. Luego toque **Ajustes generales** para configurar los ajustes de todas las cuentas o toque una cuenta para configurar los ajustes de sólo esa cuenta.

#### Para borrar una cuenta de correo electrónico:

- Abra la aplicación **E-mail** y toque el icono **Menú**  > **Ajustes** > icono **Menú**  > **Remover cuenta** > toque una cuenta > **Borrar** > **Sí**.

## Correo electrónico




### Trabajar con las carpetas de cuenta

Abra la aplicación **E-mail**, toque el icono **Menú**  > **Carpetas**.

Cada cuenta tiene las siguientes carpetas: Buzón de entrada, Buzón de salida, Enviados y Borradores. Según las funciones que admita el proveedor de servicios de la cuenta, puede contar con carpetas adicionales.

### Redactar y enviar correos electrónicos

#### Para redactar y enviar un mensaje



- 1 Mientras esté en la aplicación **E-mail**, toque .
- 2 Ingrese una dirección para el destinatario del mensaje. Al escribir el texto, se sugieren direcciones que coinciden con los contactos. Separe las direcciones con punto y coma.
- 3 Toque el campo **Cc/Cco** para copiar destinatarios. Toque  para adjuntar archivos, si es necesario.
- 4 Toque el campo de mensaje para ingresar su mensaje.
- 5 Toque  para enviar el correo electrónico.

Si no está conectado a una red, por ejemplo, si está trabajando en el modo de avión, los mensajes que envía se almacenan en la carpeta Buzón de salida hasta que se vuelva a conectar a una red.

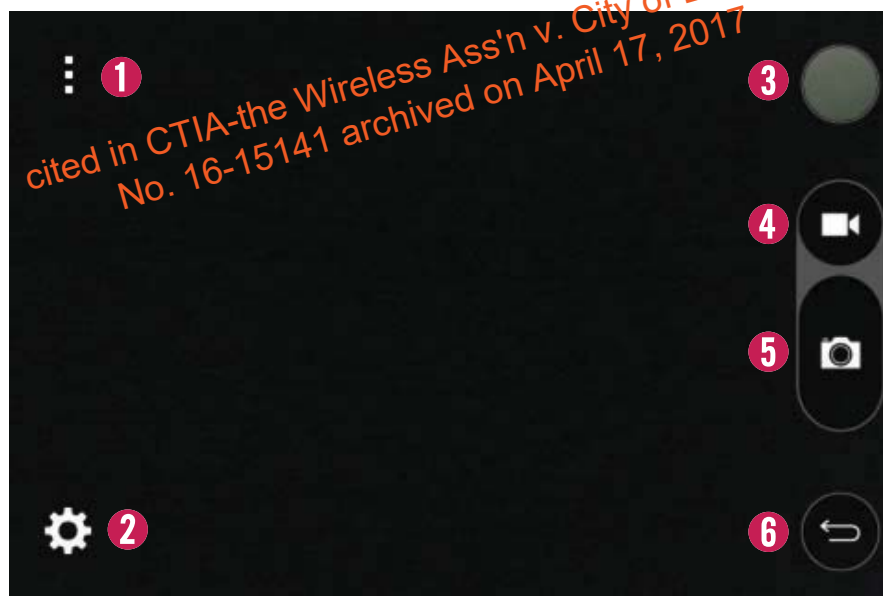
## Cámara y Video

Para abrir la aplicación Cámara, toque  desde la pantalla principal y luego toque **Cámara** .

**SUGERENCIA** Puede acceder rápidamente a la aplicación Cámara sin tener que desbloquear primero el teléfono.

- Mientras la pantalla está apagada, mantenga presionada la **Tecla de Volumen Inferior**  o **Tecla de Volumen Superior**  en el lado izquierdo del teléfono.

## Conocer el visor





- 1 Menú** – Toque para mostrar las opciones de la cámara en la pantalla.
- 2 Ajustes** – Toque para abrir la pantalla de ajustes.

## Cámara y Video

- 3 **Galería** – Toque para ver la última foto o video que ha capturado. Esta opción también le permite acceder a la Galería y ver las fotos y videos guardadas desde el modo de cámara.
- 4 **Grabar** – Toque para iniciar la grabación de video.
- 5 **Capturar** – Toque para capturar una foto.
- 6 **Tecla Volver** – Toque para salir de la cámara.

**NOTA:** La capacidad de memoria podría variar en función de cómo configure los ajustes de la cámara.

## Usar los ajustes

En el visor, toque  para abrir las opciones avanzadas. Puede cambiar la configuración de la cámara si se desplaza por la lista. Después de seleccionar la opción, toque la **Tecla Volver** .




Esta opción establece el tamaño de imagen y video. Elija entre **3M(2048x1536)**, **W2M(2048x1350)**, **2M(1536x1536)** y **1M(1280x960)** para imágenes. Para videos, la opción es **WVGA(800x480)**.



Esta opción le permite tomar fotos utilizando un comando de voz. Elija entre **Encendido** y **Apagado**. Si está establecido en Encendido, diga **Cheese**, **Smile**, **Whisky**, **Kimchi** o **LG** para tomar una foto.

	Esta opción establece un retraso después de presionar el botón Capturar/Grabar. Es ideal si quiere ser parte de la foto o video. Elija entre <b>Apagado</b> , <b>3 segundos</b> y <b>10 segundos</b> .
	Esta opción muestra líneas de cuadrícula para que pueda tomar fotos y grabar videos fácilmente.
	Esta opción establece la ubicación donde desea guardar los imágenes y videos. Elija entre <b>Tarjeta SD</b> o <b>Almacenamiento interno</b> . Este menú sólo se muestra cuando la tarjeta microSD está insertada
	Esta opción proporciona una guía rápida de ayuda.

## Tomar una foto

- 1 Abra la aplicación Cámara.
- 2 Apunte la lente de la cámara hacia el sujeto que desee fotografiar.
- 3 Toque el botón **Capturar**  para hacer la fotografía.

## Después de que haya tomado la foto






- 1 Toque la vista previa de imagen al lado del botón Grabar para ver la última foto que capturó.
- 2 Toque **Galería** y luego toque **OK**.

## Cámara y Video

**SUGERENCIA** Para establecer una de las aplicaciones disponibles como la aplicación predeterminada para mostrar imágenes, asegúrese de seleccionar **Utilizar de forma predeterminada para esta acción**.

**NOTA:** También puede elegir la aplicación Fotos para ver y editar su fotografía.

Los siguientes iconos aparecerán en la parte superior de la pantalla Galería:

	Toque para editar la foto (como recortar, rotar, agregar efectos y más).
	Toque esta opción para tomar otra foto de inmediato.
	Toque para enviar su foto a otras personas.
	Toque esta opción para borrar la foto.
	Toque para agregar la foto a la carpeta Favoritos.

Toque el icono **Menú**  para abrir las siguientes opciones avanzadas.

**Fijar imagen como** – Toque esta opción para usar la foto como **Fondo de la pantalla principal**, **Fondo de pantalla**, **Foto de contacto** o **Pantalla de bloqueo**.

**Mover** – Toque para mover la foto o video a otro álbum.

**Copiar** – Toque para copiar la foto o video y guardarlo en otro álbum.

**Presentación** – Toque esta opción para mostrar una presentación de diapositivas usando todas sus fotos.

**Girar a la izquierda/derecha** – Toque para girar la foto a la izquierda o a la derecha.

**Recortar** – Toque para recortar la foto.

**Agregar ubicación** – Toque para agregar información de ubicación a la foto.

**Renombrar** – Toque para cambiar el nombre de la foto o video.

**Imprimir** – Toque para imprimir la foto.

**Detalles** – Toque esta opción para mostrar información sobre la foto o video.



## Ver las fotos y videos guardados

Puede acceder a las fotos y videos guardados desde el modo de cámara. Solamente toque la vista previa de imagen al lado del botón Grabar.



- 1 Elija la aplicación que desea usar para ver o editar las fotografías.
- 2 Toque **Galería** o **Fotos** y luego toque **OK**.
  - Para ver más fotografías, desplácese hacia la izquierda o hacia la derecha.
  - Para alejar o acercar, toque dos veces la pantalla o toque la pantalla con dos dedos y sepárelos (junte los dedos para acercar).

## Cámara y Video

### Cómo grabar un video

- 1 Abra la aplicación **Cámara**.
- 2 El visor de la cámara de video aparecerá en la pantalla.
- 3 Con el teléfono en la mano, apunte la lente hacia el objetivo que desea capturar en el video.
- 4 Toque el botón **Grabar**  una vez para iniciar la grabación.
- 5 Se muestra un temporizador que indica la duración del video.
- 6 Toque el botón **Detener**  para detener la grabación.

#### NOTA:

- Toque  para capturar una imagen de la pantalla mientras graba un video.
- Toque  para pausar la grabación.
- Mientras graba un video, coloque dos dedos en la pantalla y pellizca para acercar la imagen.




CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 11, 2017




## Después de grabar un video

Toque la vista previa de imagen al lado del botón Grabar para ver el último video que grabó.

En la parte superior de la pantalla Galería aparecerán los siguientes iconos:

	Toque esta opción para grabar otro video inmediatamente.
	Toque para enviar su video a otras personas o para compartir mediante servicios de redes sociales.
	Toque para eliminar el video.

## Ver los videos guardados

- 1 En la pantalla de la cámara, toque la vista previa de imagen al lado del botón Grabar.
- 2 La Galería aparecerá en la pantalla.
- 3 Toque  para reproducir el video.




## Ajustar el volumen mientras reproduce un video

Para ajustar el volumen de un video mientras se está reproduciendo, utilice las Teclas de Volumen ubicadas en el lado izquierdo del teléfono.

# Funciones Únicas de LG

## Modo invitado

Para proteger su privacidad o limitar algunas aplicaciones a sus hijos, puede utilizar el Modo invitado. Puede limitar las aplicaciones que se muestran cuando presta su teléfono a otros.



- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Modo invitado**.
- 2 Toque **Tipo de bloqueo de pantalla** para establecer un patrón para iniciar el Modo invitado.
- 3 Toque **Aplicaciones permitidas** y seleccione las aplicaciones que desea habilitar para el Modo invitado.
- 4 Toque **Fondo de pantalla** para cambiar el fondo de pantalla para la pantalla principal del Modo invitado.
- 5 Toque el botón  para habilitar el Modo invitado.

**NOTA:** Si no ha establecido un bloqueo de pantalla, se le solicitará que cree uno.

## Knock Code

La función Knock Code le permite tocar un patrón personalizado en cualquier parte de la pantalla para acceder a la pantalla principal instantáneamente.

### Para activar la función Knock Code

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Bloqueo de pantalla** > **Seleccionar bloqueo de pantalla** > **Knock Code**.
- 2 Se muestra una pantalla que le guía a través de la configuración de Knock Code. Debe crear un PIN de seguridad como medida de seguridad en caso de que olvide su Knock Code.

## KnockON

La función KnockON le permite encender y apagar la pantalla simplemente con un doble toque en la pantalla.

### Usar KnockON

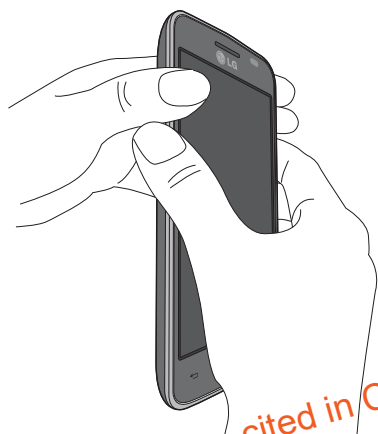
- Cuando la pantalla este apagada, toque el centro de la pantalla dos veces rápidamente para encenderla.
- Para apagar la pantalla, toque dos veces rápidamente en la Barra de estado en cualquier pantalla (excepto el visor de la cámara) o una área vacía de la pantalla principal.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Funciones Únicas de LG

## QuickMemo+

La función QuickMemo+ le permite capturar fotos de la pantalla y utilizarlas para crear notas. Puede utilizar QuickMemo+ para crear notas de manera sencilla durante una llamada, con una imagen guardada o en la pantalla de llamada actual.



- 1 Para acceder a la función **QuickMemo+**, presione ambas Teclas de Volumen durante un segundo en la pantalla que desee capturar.

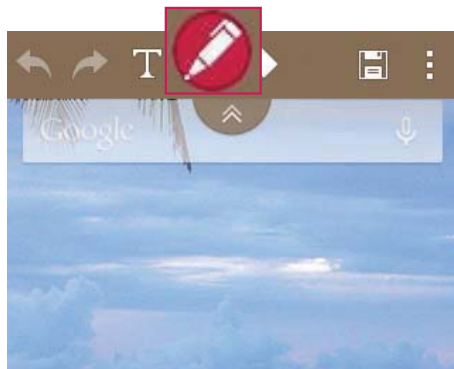
*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

0

0




Arrastre la Barra de estado hacia abajo y toque  en la barra de Ajustes rápidos.



2 Crea su nota con las opciones de la barra de herramientas.






3 Toque  en la barra de herramientas para guardar la nota en la aplicación QuickMemo+ o la Galería.

*Not cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*






**NOTA:** Al usar la función QuickMemo+, use la punta de su dedo. No utilice la uña.

## Usar las opciones de la barra de herramientas de QuickMemo+

Las opciones de la barra de herramientas de QuickMemo+ le permiten crear notas fácilmente. Toque la etiqueta de la barra de herramientas  para acceder y ocultar a los iconos de la barra de herramientas de QuickMemo +.

	Toque para deshacer la acción más reciente.
	Toque para rehacer la acción más recientemente borrada.

## Funciones Únicas de LG

	Toque para introducir texto en su nota.
	Toque para seleccionar el tipo y color del bolígrafo. También puede seleccionar al espesor y la transparencia.
	Toque para usar el borrador para borrar marcas del bolígrafo de la nota.
	Toque para guardar la nota en la Galería o a la aplicación QuickMemo+.
	Toque para acceder a opciones adicionales.

### Opciones del menú de QuickMemo+

Desde la pantalla de QuickMemo+ toque el icono **Menú**  para acceder a las siguientes opciones.

- Toque **Agregar** para insertar archivos almacenados en el teléfono/tarjeta de memoria dentro de la nota.
- Toque **Mover** para mover la nota actual a otra carpeta.
- Toque **Borrar** para borrar la nota actual.
- Toque **Exportar** para exportar la nota actual al almacenamiento interno a la tarjeta SD.
- Toque **Compartir** para compartir la nota con otros.
- Toque **Estilo del papel** para establecer el fondo de papel de la nota.

## Para salir de la función QuickMemo+

También podrá salir de la función QuickMemo+ si toca la **Tecla Volver** .

## Ver las notas guardadas

Las notas se almacenan en la aplicación **Galería** o **QuickMemo+**.



- En la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Galería**  y después toque el álbum **QuickMemo+**.
- En la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **QuickMemo+**  y después toque su nota.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Multimedia

## Galería

Puede almacenar archivos multimedia en la memoria interna y en la externa para acceder fácilmente a todos sus archivos multimedia. Use esta aplicación para ver archivos multimedia como fotos y videos.

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Galería** .

### NOTA:

- No se admiten algunos formatos de archivo según el software instalado en el teléfono.
- Algunos archivos pueden no reproducirse adecuadamente, según cómo estén codificados.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Ver las fotos

Abra la Galería para mostrar sus álbumes disponibles. Cuando algunas aplicaciones guardan una foto, se crea una carpeta automáticamente para contener la fotografía. Por ejemplo, tomando una captura de pantalla crea automáticamente la carpeta Screenshots.

Las fotos se muestran por fecha de creación en una carpeta. Seleccione una foto para verla en pantalla completa. Deslícese hacia la izquierda o derecha para ver la imagen anterior o siguiente.

### Cómo acercar o alejar una imagen

Use uno de los métodos siguientes para acercar una imagen:



- Toque dos veces en cualquier lugar para acercar.
- Coloque dos dedos sobre la pantalla y aléjelos para acercar la imagen. Junte los dedos para alejar la imagen, o toque dos veces para regresar.

## Reproducción de videos

Los archivos de video muestran el icono  en la previsualización. Seleccione un video para mirar y toque .

### NOTA:

- No se admiten algunos formatos de archivo según el software del teléfono.
- Si el tamaño de archivo es superior a la capacidad de memoria disponible, puede producirse un error al abrir los archivos.


cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## Editar fotos

Mientras ve una foto, toque **Editar**  y utilice las opciones avanzadas de edición.

## Borrar imágenes

Use uno de los siguientes métodos:

- En un álbum, toque  y seleccione fotos/videos con un toque. Luego toque **Borrar**.
- Mientras mira una vista previa de imagen o video, toque .

## Multimedia

### Establecer una foto como fondo de pantalla






Mientras vea una foto, toque el icono **Menú**  y seleccione **Fijar imagen como** para establecer la imagen como el fondo de pantalla principal o de la pantalla de bloqueo.

### Videos

El teléfono cuenta con un reproductor de video integrado para que pueda reproducir sus videos favoritos.

### Reproducción de un video

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Galería** .
- 2 Abra el álbum que contiene el video deseada y tóquelo para reproducirlo.

	Toque esta opción para pausar el video.
	Toque esta opción para reanudar el video.
	Toque y mantenga presionado para avanzar rápidamente en incrementos de 3 segundos. Toque esta opción una vez para adelantar 10 segundos.
	Toque y mantenga presionado para retroceder en incrementos de 3 segundos. Toque esta opción una vez para retroceder 10 segundos.
	Toque para ajustar el volumen del video.

CTIA-the Wireless Assn. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



Toque para bloquear una pantalla de video.

Para cambiar el volumen mientras mira un video, presione las Teclas de Volumen ubicadas en el lado lateral izquierdo del teléfono.

Toque y mantenga presionado un video en la lista para acceder a **Compartir**, **Borrar**, **Renombrar** y **Detalles**.

**NOTA:** Mientras reproduce un video, deslice el lado izquierdo de la pantalla hacia arriba y hacia abajo para ajustar el brillo. Deslice el lado derecho de la pantalla hacia arriba y hacia abajo para ajustar el volumen. También puede deslizar la parte inferior de la pantalla hacia la derecha y hacia la izquierda para avanzar o retroceder.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Música

El teléfono cuenta con un reproductor de música para que pueda escuchar todas sus canciones favoritas.










### Reproducir una canción

- 1 En la pantalla principal, toque **Aplicaciones**  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (en caso necesario) > **Música** .
- 2 Toque la etiqueta **Canciones**.
- 3 Toque la canción que desea reproducir.



Toque esta opción para agregar una canción a la lista de canciones favoritas.

## Multimedia

	Toque esta opción para ajustar el modo aleatorio.
	Toque esta opción para ajustar el modo de repetición.
	Toque para ajustar el volumen de la música.
	Toque esta opción para pausar la reproducción.
	Toque esta opción para reanudar la reproducción.
	Toque para pasar a la siguiente canción del álbum o la lista de reproducción. Toque y mantenga presionado para avanzar rápidamente en incrementos de 3 segundos.
	Toque esta opción para regresar al principio de la canción. Toque dos veces para regresar a la canción anterior. Toque y mantenga presionado para retroceder en incrementos de 3 segundos.
	Toque esta opción para abrir la lista de reproducción actual.
	Toque para acceder a los ajustes adicionales.

Para cambiar el volumen mientras escucha música, presione las Teclas de volumen, ubicadas en el lado izquierdo del teléfono.

Mantenga presionada cualquier canción de la lista para acceder a **Reproducir**, **Agregar a la lista de reproducción**, **Borrar**, **Compartir**, **Fijar como tono de timbre**, **Detalles** y **Buscar**.




**NOTA:**


- Algunos formatos de archivo no son compatibles, según el software del teléfono.
- Si el tamaño de archivo es superior a la capacidad de memoria disponible, puede producirse un error al abrir los archivos.
- Es probable que los archivos de música estén protegidos por leyes de derecho de autor nacionales y tratados internacionales. Por tanto, puede que sea necesario obtener permiso o una licencia para reproducir o copiar música.
- En algunos países, las leyes nacionales prohíben la realización de copias de material protegido con copyright. Antes de descargar o copiar el archivo, infórmese sobre la legislación relativa a este tipo de material en el país correspondiente.

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Assn. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017








## Herramientas

### Definir una alarma


- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Reloj**  > .
- 2 Establezca la hora y seleccione **AM** o **PM**.
- 3 Establezca **Repetir**, **Posponer por**, **Vibración**, **Tono de alarma**, **Volumen de alarma**, **Aplicación de ejecución autom.**, **Bloqueo de rompecabezas** y **Notas**.
- 4 Toque **Guardar** para guardar la alarma.

**NOTA:** Para cambiar los ajustes de alarma, toque el icono **Menú**  en la pantalla de Alarmas y seleccione **Ajustes**.





### Uso de la calculadora

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Calculadora** .
- 2 Toque las teclas numéricas para introducir los números.
- 3 Para cálculos simples, toque la función que desee (, ,  o ) seguida de .

**NOTA:** Rota la pantalla horizontalmente para usar la calculadora científica para cálculos más complejos.

**NOTA:** Para ver el historial de cálculos previos, toque el icono **Menú**  y seleccione **Historial de los cálculos**.




## Agregar un evento al calendario

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Agenda** .
- 2 Toque  y elija entre **Día**, **Semana**, **Mes**, **Año** o **Agenda** para cambiar la vista del mes.
- 3 Toque la fecha en la que desea añadir un evento y toque .
- 4 Toque el campo **Nombre del evento** y escriba el nombre del evento.
- 5 Toque el campo **Ubicación** e introduzca la ubicación. Marque la fecha e introduzca la hora a la que le gustaría que empiece y termine el evento.
- 6 Si desea agregar una nota al evento, toque el campo **Descripción** e introduzca los detalles.
- 7 Si desea repetir la alarma, establezca la opción **Repetir**. También puede establecer la opción **Recordatorios**, de ser necesario.
- 8 Toque **Guardar** para guardar el evento en el calendario.

## Herramientas

### Tareas






La aplicación Tareas se puede sincronizar con la cuenta de MS Exchange. Puede crear y gestionar las tareas desde su teléfono, o desde MS Outlook o MS Office Outlook Web Access.


- 1 En la pantalla principal, toque **Aplicaciones**  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (en caso necesario) > **Tareas** .
- 2 Toque el icono **Agregar tarea**  (en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla).
- 3 Ingrese la información necesaria.
- 4 Toque **Guardar** para guardar la tarea.

### Grabadora de voz

Utilice el grabador de voz para grabar notas de voz u otros archivos de audio.

### Grabar sonido o voz



- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Grabador de voz** .
- 2 Toque  para comenzar a grabar.
- 3 Toque  para finalizar la grabación.
- 4 Toque  para escuchar la grabación.

**NOTA:** Toque  para acceder a su lista de grabaciones. Puede escuchar cualquier grabación guardada de la lista. El tiempo disponible de grabación puede variar del tiempo real de grabación.



## Polaris Office

Polaris Office le permite usar varios tipos de documentos, incluyendo documentos de MS Office y PDF.

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Polaris Office** .

## Google+

Use esta aplicación para permanecer conectado con personas mediante el servicio de red social de Google.

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > Carpeta **Google**  > **Google+** .

**NOTA:** Esta aplicación puede no estar disponible, según la región o el proveedor de servicio.

## Herramientas

### Búsqueda de voz

Use esta aplicación para buscar en páginas web mediante el uso de voz.

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > Carpeta **Google**  > **Búsqueda por voz** .
- 2 Diga una palabra o frase clave cuando aparezca **Habla ahora** en la pantalla. Seleccione una de las palabras clave sugeridas que aparecen.

**NOTA:** Esta aplicación puede no estar disponible, según la región o el proveedor de servicio.

### Descargas

Use esta aplicación para ver que archivos se han descargado a través de las aplicaciones.

- Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Descargas** .

Filed in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

# Navegar la web

## Navegador






Use esta aplicación para navegar por Internet. El navegador le ofrece un rápido y colorido mundo de juegos, música, noticias, deportes, entretenimiento y mucho más, al que puede acceder directamente desde el teléfono celular donde quiera que se encuentre.

**NOTA:** Incurrirá cargos adicionales cuando se conecte a estos servicios y descargue contenido. Consulte con el proveedor de red cuáles son los cargos por transferencia de datos.

Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Internet** .

## Cómo utilizar la barra de herramientas del navegador

Desplace hacia la parte superior de la pantalla para mostrar la barra de herramientas del navegador. Las siguientes opciones están disponibles.

	Toque para volver una página.
	Toque para avanzar una página. Esto es lo contrario a lo que sucede si presiona la <b>Tecla Volver</b>  , que pasa a la página que visitó antes de la actual.
	Toque para ir a la página de inicio.
	Toque para agregar una nueva ventana.

## Navegar la web



Toque para acceder a los favoritos.

### Ver las páginas web

Toque el campo de dirección, introduzca la dirección web y toque  en el teclado.

### Abrir una página

Para abrir una nueva página, toque  > .

Para ir a una página abierta, toque , deslícese hacia arriba o abajo y toque la página para seleccionarla.

### Búsqueda por voz en la web

Toque el campo de dirección, toque , diga en voz alta una palabra clave y luego seleccione una de las palabras clave sugeridas.


**NOTA:** Esta función puede no estar disponible, según la región o el proveedor de servicio.

### Favoritos

Para marcar como favorita la página web actual, toque el icono **Menú**  > **Agregar a Favoritos** > **OK**.



Para abrir una página favorita, toque  y seleccione el favorito.

## Historial

Para abrir una página web desde la lista de páginas web visitadas recientemente, toque  > etiqueta **Último(s) acceso(s)**. Para borrar el historial, toque  > **Sí**.

## Chrome

Use Chrome para buscar información y buscar páginas web.

Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Chrome** .

## Ver las páginas web

Toque el campo de dirección, ingrese una dirección web o criterios de búsqueda y toque  en el teclado.

## Abrir una página

Para ir a una nueva página, toque  > **+ Pestaña**.

Para ir a una página abierta, toque , deslícese hacia arriba o abajo y toque la página para seleccionarla.

## Búsqueda por voz en la web



Toque el campo de dirección, toque , diga en voz alta una palabra clave y luego seleccione una de las palabras clave sugeridas.

**NOTA:** Esta función puede no estar disponible, según la región o el proveedor de servicio.

## Navegar la web

### Sincronización con otros dispositivos

Sincronice pestañas y favoritos abiertos para usar con Chrome desde otros dispositivos cuando haya iniciado con la misma cuenta de Google.

Para ver las pestañas abiertas en otros dispositivos, toque  > **+ Pestaña** > **Pestañas recientes** . Seleccione una página web para abrir.



### Acceder a favoritos

Para ver los favoritos, toque y mantenga presionada la **Tecla Aplicaciones Recientes**  > **Marcadores**.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Configuración

## Acceso al menú de configuración

- 1 Desde la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes** .
- 2 Seleccione una opción de ajustes y configure los ajustes deseados.

## Ajustes de redes inalámbricas

### < Modo avión >


**Modo avión** – Al activar el modo avión se desactivan todas las conexiones inalámbricas.

### < Wi-Fi >

**Wi-Fi** – Con esta opción se activa la función Wi-Fi para conectarse a las redes Wi-Fi disponibles. También puede establecer varios otros ajustes de Wi-Fi.

### SUGERENCIA Cómo obtener la dirección MAC

Para configurar una conexión en algunas redes inalámbricas con filtros MAC, es posible que deba introducir la dirección MAC de su teléfono en el router.

Para encontrar la dirección MAC, acceda a los ajustes de Wi-Fi y toque el icono **Menú**  > **Wi-Fi avanzado** > **Dirección MAC**.

### < Bluetooth >

Encienda o apague la función de Bluetooth. También puede establecer varios otros ajustes de Bluetooth.

## Configuración

### < Datos móviles >

Muestra el uso de datos y permite establecer un límite de uso de datos móviles.

### < Llamadas >

**Buzón de voz** – Permite establecer varias opciones para el servicio de correo de voz.

**Números de marcación fija** – Active esta opción y compile una lista de números a los que puede llamar desde su teléfono. Necesitará el código PIN2, que podrá obtener a través de su operador. Sólo puede llamar desde su teléfono a los números que estén incluidos en la lista de marcación fija.

**ID del emisor** – Permite elegir cómo mostrar su número para las llamadas salientes.

**Mensaje de alerta de llamada recibida** – Muestra un mensaje de notificación de llamada recibida al usar aplicaciones.

**Rechazar con mensaje** – Cuando rechaza una llamada, puede enviar un mensaje rápido con esta función. Es útil si necesita rechazar una llamada durante una reunión.

**Protector de privacidad** – Permite ocultar el nombre de la persona que hace la llamada en una llamada entrante.

**Contestar automáticamente** – Permite activar y desactivar la función de responder una llamada automáticamente con dispositivos de manos libres.

**Vibrar al conectarse** – Permite que el teléfono vibre cuando la otra persona contesta la llamada.

**Modo TTY** – Establece el modo de TTY para comunicarse con dispositivos TTY.

**Audífonos** – Seleccione para activar la compatibilidad con audífonos.

CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



**La tecla Encender/Apagar termina la llamada** – Seleccione para finalizar las llamadas presionando la Tecla Encender/Bloquear.

**Duración de llamadas** – Permite ver la duración de la última llamada, todas las llamadas realizadas, todas las llamadas recibidas y todas las llamadas combinadas. Toque una opción para restaurar el contador.

**Ajustes de sonido** – Permite configurar los ajustes de sonido del teléfono.

**Ajustes adicionales** – Permite cambiar las siguientes opciones.

**Desvío de llamada** – Permite establecer las opciones de desvío de llamada.

**Llamada en espera** – Si está activada esta opción, el teléfono le informa de llamadas recibidas durante llamadas en curso (dependiendo en su proveedor de servicios).

< Más... >

**Redes móviles** – Permite administrar los datos móviles y establecer puntos de acceso para servicios de datos.

**VPN** – Permite establecer y administrar Redes Privadas Virtuales (VPN).

**NOTA:** Debe configurar un patrón, PIN o una contraseña para bloqueo de pantalla antes de que pueda usar el almacenamiento de credenciales.

## Ajustes de dispositivo


< Sonido >


**Perfil de sonido** – Establece el perfil de sonido en **Sonido**, **Solamente vibrar** o **Silencioso**.

## Configuración


**Volúmenes** – Administra el volumen de **Tono de timbre**, **Sonido de notificaciones**, **Respuesta táctil y sistema**, y **Música, video, juegos y otros medios**.

**Modo Silencioso** – Permite establecer un tiempo para configurar el perfil de sonido a silencioso. Esto apaga todos los sonidos excepto alarmas y permite llamadas repetidas o llamadas de contactos permitidos.

**Tono de timbre** – Permite establecer el tono del timbre para las llamadas. También puede agregar un tono de timbre si toca el icono **Nuevo**  (en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla).

**Sonido de notificaciones** – Establece el sonido de las notificaciones. También puede agregar un sonido de notificación si toca el icono **Nuevo**  (en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla).

**Tono de timbre con vibración** – Seleccione esta opción para que el teléfono vibre además de reproducir el tono de timbre al recibir llamadas.

**Tipo de Vibración** – Establece las opciones de vibración de llamadas entrantes. Elija entre **Estándar**, **Larga**, **Repetición corta**, **Rápida** o **Tic Tac**. Toque el icono **Nuevo**  (en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla) para crear su propio patrón de vibración.

**Vibrar al tocar** – Marque la casilla de verificación para que el teléfono vibre cuando toca la pantalla (por ejemplo, tocar las teclas táctiles y hacer selecciones).

**Efectos de sonido** – Permite establecer el sonido del teclado numérico, toque con sonido y el sonido al bloquear y desbloquear la pantalla.

**Notificaciones de mensaje/llamada de voz** – Permite que el teléfono anuncie llamadas recibidas y mensajes en voz alta.

## < Pantalla >

**Brillo** – Permite ajustar el brillo de la pantalla. Seleccione **Brillo nocturno** para establecer el brillo en 0% automáticamente entre las 12:00 am y las 6:00 am.

**Límite de tiempo de pantalla** – Establece la cantidad de tiempo que pasará antes de que se oscurezca la pantalla.

**Efecto al apagar la pantalla** – Establece el efecto de animación utilizado cuando la pantalla se apaga.

**Pantalla giratoria** – Active para rotar la orientación de la pantalla cuando gire el teléfono.

**Protector de pantalla** – Permite que el protector de pantalla se muestre cuando el teléfono está en reposo mientras está en la base y/o mientras se está cargando.

**Tipo de fuente** – Cambia el tipo de fuente de la pantalla.

**Tamaño de fuente** – Cambia el tamaño de la fuente en la pantalla.

## < Pantalla principal >

**Fondo de pantalla** – Establece el fondo de pantalla de la pantalla principal. Elija entre **Fondos animados**, **Fotos**, **Galería** y **Galería de fondos de pantalla**.

**Efectos de la pantalla** – Establece el efecto de animación utilizado cuando desliza para cambiar paneles. Elija entre **Diapositiva**, **Brisa**, **Acordeón**, **Panorama**, **Carrusel**, **Capa** o **Dominó**.

**Desplazar pantalla circularmente** – Marque la casilla de verificación para establecer que la pantalla principal se desplace continuamente, eliminando la necesidad de volver a desplazarlas en el sentido opuesto una vez que haya llegado al final.

## Configuración

**Copia de respaldo y restauración de pantalla** – Permite hacer copias de respaldo y restaurar el diseño de las aplicaciones y el fondo de la pantalla.

**Ayuda** – Muestra unos consejos útiles acerca de la pantalla principal.

### < Bloqueo de pantalla >

**Seleccionar bloqueo de pantalla** – Establece un bloqueo de pantalla para seguridad de su teléfono. Establezca **Ninguno**, **Deslizar**, **Knock Code**, **Patron**, **PIN** o **Contraseña**.

**Fondo de pantalla** – Seleccione el fondo de pantalla para su bloqueo de pantalla entre **Galería** o **Galería de fondos de pantalla**.

**Widgets** – Permite mostrar widgets en la pantalla de bloqueo. Para agregar widgets mientras está en la pantalla de bloqueo, deslice la parte superior de la pantalla hacia la derecha y toque el icono **Agregar**.

**Atajos** – Personalice los atajos de la pantalla de bloqueo.

**Contacto p/ teléfono perdido** – Muestra información de contacto en la pantalla de bloqueo en caso que pierda el teléfono.

**Temporizador de bloqueo** – Permite elegir la cantidad de tiempo para bloquear el teléfono después de que se apague la pantalla.

**La tecla Encender/Apagar/Bloquear bloquea inmediatamente** – Permite bloquear el teléfono cuando se presiona la Tecla Encender/Bloquear.

### < Gestos >

**Silenciar llamada recibida** – Voltee el teléfono para silenciar las llamadas recibidas.

**Posponer o detener alarma** – Voltee el teléfono para repetir o detener la alarma.

*City of Berkeley v. Wireless Ass'n, No. 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017.*

**Detener el video** – Voltee el teléfono para pausar el video.

**Ayuda** – Toque esta opción para obtener información sobre cómo usar la función Gestos del teléfono.

**Calibración del sensor de movimiento** – Mejora la precisión de la inclinación y la velocidad del sensor.

### < Almacenamiento >

**Almacenamiento Interno** – Permite ver información acerca del uso del almacenamiento interno.

**MicroSD** – Permite verificar el espacio total disponible de la tarjeta microSD. Toque **Desactivar la MicroSD** para retirarla con seguridad. Si no hay una tarjeta SD instalada, toque **Activar MicroSD**. Toque **Formatear la MicroSD** si desea eliminar toda la información que incluye

### < Batería >

La información de carga de la batería se muestra en una gráfica de la batería junto con el porcentaje de la carga restante y su estado. Toque el icono de carga de batería para mostrar la pantalla para ver el nivel de uso de la batería y los detalles del uso. Se muestran los componentes y aplicaciones que utilizan la mayor parte de la energía de la batería. Toque una de las entradas para obtener información más detallada.

**Porcentaje de la batería en la barra de estado** – Marque esta opción para mostrar el porcentaje de nivel de batería en la Barra de estado junto al icono de la batería.

## Configuración

**Ahorro de energía** – Toque el botón  para alternar entre activado y desactivado.

**Activar ahorro de energía** – Elija activar el ahorro de energía cuando la carga de batería llegue a un cierto nivel. Elija entre **Inmediatamente**, **10% de la batería**, **20% de la batería**, **30% de la batería** y **50% de la batería**.

**Sincronización automática** – Seleccione esta opción para desactivar la sincronización automática.

**Wi-Fi** – Desactiva la conexión Wi-Fi si no está utilizando datos.

**Bluetooth** – Apaga el Bluetooth si este no está conectado a un dispositivo.

**Vibrar al tocar** – Permite desactivar la respuesta al toque.

**Brillo** – Ajusta el brillo.

**Límite de tiempo de pantalla** – Ajuste el tiempo de espera de pantalla.

**Ayuda** – Muestra información acerca de la función Ahorro de energía.

### < Aplicaciones >

Use el menú de Aplicaciones de aplicaciones para ver los detalles de las aplicaciones instaladas en el teléfono, administrar sus datos y obligarlas a detenerse.

Deslice la pantalla a la izquierda y a la derecha para seleccionar una de las tres etiquetas en la parte superior de la pantalla para ver información detallada de las aplicaciones **Descargadas**, **En la MicroSD**, **En Ejecución** y **Todas** las aplicaciones.

Toque una entrada para ver más información, toque **Parar** (o **Forzar detención**) y luego **OK** para que deje de ejecutarse.

*CTIA - the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-16041 archived on April 17, 2017*

### < Aplicación SMS predeterminada >

Establece la aplicación de mensajería predeterminada. Elija de **Mensajes**, **Hangouts** o cualquier otra aplicación descargada disponible.

## Ajustes personales

### < Cuentas y sincronización >

Esta opción permite que las aplicaciones sincronicen datos en segundo plano, ya sea que el usuario esté trabajando activamente en ellos o no. Si desmarca la opción **Sincronización automática de datos** puede ahorrar batería y disminuir (pero no eliminar) el uso de datos.

### < Modo invitado >

Utilice el modo de invitado cuando permita que otra persona utilice su teléfono. Esa persona sólo podrá utilizar las aplicaciones que usted ha seleccionado. Cuando configure el Modo invitado, sólo debe introducir el patrón de invitado, el cual es diferente al patrón de desbloqueo normal, en la pantalla de bloqueo para poner el teléfono en Modo invitado fácilmente. Toque **Ayuda** para más información.

**NOTA:** Para usar el modo invitado, establezca el bloqueo de pantalla en el modo patrón. El invitado también puede usar aplicaciones que no se han preseleccionado, pero que están vinculadas con las aplicaciones preseleccionadas.



## Configuración

### < Ubicación >

#### Modo

**Alta seguridad (GPS y redes)** – Use GPS, Wi-Fi o redes móviles para estimar la ubicación.

**Ahorro de batería (Solo redes)** – Use Wi-Fi y redes móviles para estimar la ubicación.

**Sensores del dispositivo solamente (Solo GPS)** – Use GPS para localizar su ubicación.

#### Solicitud de Ubicación Reciente

Muestra aplicaciones que han solicitado información de ubicación recientemente.

#### Servicios de Ubicación

Permite ver y administrar los ajustes de ubicación de Google.

### < Seguridad >

**Encriptar teléfono** – Permite encriptar el teléfono a fin de mantenerlo seguro. Después de encriptar el teléfono, se debe ingresar un PIN o contraseña cada vez que encienda el teléfono.

**Encriptar almacenamiento de tarjeta MicroSD** – Permite encriptar los datos de la tarjeta SD para asegurarlos. Después de encriptar la tarjeta, no podrás usarla en otro dispositivo.

**Fijar bloqueo de tarjeta SIM** – Permite que requiera un PIN para utilizar el teléfono.

**Hacer visible la contraseña** – Muestra el último carácter de la contraseña oculta a medida que escribe.

*cited in CTIA-The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



**Administradores de dispositivos** – Vea o desactive los administradores del teléfono.

**Orígenes desconocidos** – Marque la casilla de verificación para instalar aplicaciones distintas de Play Store.

**Revisar las aplicaciones** – Marque la casilla de verificación para advertir antes de instalar aplicaciones que pudieran causar daño o no permitir las.

**Acceso a las notificaciones** – Permite que aplicaciones puedan ser notificadas cuando notificaciones son publicadas o eliminadas del sistema.

**Tipo de almacenamiento** – Muestra el tipo de almacenamiento para el almacenamiento de credenciales.

**Credenciales de confianza** – Muestra certificados de CA confiables.

**Instalar desde almacenamiento** – Permite instalar certificados cifrados desde el almacenamiento interno o externo.

**Borrar credenciales** – Permite borrar todos los certificados.

## < Idioma y teclado >

**Idioma** – Permite elegir un idioma para el teléfono.

**Predeterminado** – Establece el teclado predeterminado para usar al introducir texto.

**Teclado LG** – Toque  para cambiar los siguientes ajustes del Teclado LG:

**Idioma de entrada y diseño del teclado** – Establece el idioma y diseño (QWERTY/Teléfono) del teclado.

**Diseño y altura del teclado** – Permite ajustar las teclas de la fila inferior, la altura y el tema del teclado.

## Configuración

**Mostrar palabras sugeridas** – Permite mostrar palabras a través de la predicción de texto.

**Corrección automática** – Permite elegir el nivel de corrección automática.

**Actualizar sugerencias de palabras** – Permite actualizar las sugerencias de palabras.

**Ajustes adicionales** – Permite establecer las siguientes opciones.

**Vibrar al tocar la tecla** – Marque la casilla de verificación para que el teléfono vibre al tocar la teclas del teclado.

**Sonido al tocar la tecla** – Marque la casilla de verificación para que el teléfono reproduzca un sonido al tocar las teclas del teclado.

**Exhibir la tecla al tocarla** – Marque la casilla de verificación para mostrar un globo con cada carácter al introducir texto.

**Mayúsculas-automáticas** – Permite escribir la primera palabra de cada oración en mayúscula automáticamente.

**Puntuación automática** – Permite insertar un punto al tocar la tecla de espacio dos veces.


**Corrector ortográfico** – Marque la casilla de verificación para mostrar errores de ortografía.

**Sugerencias bilingües** – Permite seleccionar dos idiomas para sugerencia de palabras.

**Borrar el historial de sugerencias de palabras** – Permite borrar el historial de las palabras sugeridas.

**Diccionario personal** – Permite agregar palabras a la lista de sugerencias de palabras.

**Ayuda** – Muestra información útil acerca del teclado LG.

**Dictado por voz de Google** – Marque la casilla de verificación para permitir el uso de la función Dictado por voz de Google para introducir texto. Toque  para cambiar los ajustes deseados.

**Búsqueda por voz** – Permite establecer las siguientes opciones de búsqueda por VOZ.

**Idiomas** – Seleccione el idioma que desea usar con la búsqueda por voz.

**Salida de voz** – Establece cuándo utilizar la salida de voz. Elija entre **Activado**, **Solo con manos libres** y **Desactivado**. Para activar la salida de voz sólo cuando tenga unos auriculares conectados al teléfono, seleccione la opción Solo con manos libres.

**Detección de "Ok Google"** – Establece que la aplicación de búsqueda por Google se abra automáticamente cuando diga "Ok Google".

**Bloquear pal. ofensivas** – Seleccione para ocultar resultados de voz reconocidos con palabras ofensivas.

**Historial de audio** – Al utilizar comandos de voz, como "Ok Google" o tocar el icono del micrófono. Google puede almacenar y utilizar la grabación de lo que digas después del comando de voz, más unos segundos previos, y asociar esa información a la cuenta de Google. El objetivo es reconocer mejor tu voz y mejorar la función de reconocimiento de voz en general.

**Administrar hist. audio** – Permite administrar el historial de audio.

**Auriculares Bluetooth** – Seleccione esta opción para grabar sonido por medio de un auricular Bluetooth conectado.

## Configuración

**Salida de síntesis de voz** – Establece el motor de voz preferido y la velocidad de la misma (lenta vs. rápida). También reproduce una breve demostración de síntesis de voz.

**Velocidad del puntero** – Establece la velocidad del puntero con una barra deslizable para seleccionarla.

### < Copia de respaldo y restauración >

**Copia de respaldo de datos** – Realice una copia de respaldo de sus datos de aplicaciones, contraseñas de Wi-Fi y otros ajustes en los servidores de Google.


**Cuenta de copia de respaldo** – Permite establecer la cuenta donde desea respaldar data.

**Restauración automática** – Cuando reinstala una aplicación, restaure los ajustes y datos respaldados.

**Restaurar datos de fábrica** – Restablece la configuración a los valores predeterminados de fábrica y borra todos los datos.

## Ajustes de sistema

### Tecla de acceso directo

Toque el botón  (en la esquina superior derecha de la pantalla) para alternar entre Encendido o Apagado. Encendiendo la función le permite mantener presionadas las Teclas de volumen para obtener un acceso rápido a las aplicaciones.

CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 11, 2017

## < Fecha y hora >

**Fecha y hora automáticas** – Seleccione para usar la fecha y hora proporcionada por la red.

**Zona horaria automática** – Seleccione para usar la zona horaria proporcionada por la red.

**Fijar fecha** – Le permite ajustar manualmente la fecha del teléfono. Esta opción no está disponible cuando la opción Fecha y hora automáticas está activada.

**Fijar hora** – Le permite ajustar manualmente la hora del teléfono. Esta opción no está disponible cuando la opción Fecha y hora automáticas está activada.

**Seleccionar zona horaria** – Le permite seleccionar otra zona horaria aparte de la proporcionada por la red. Esta configuración no está disponible cuando la opción Zona horaria automática está activada.

**Usar formato de 24 horas** – Seleccione para mostrar la hora con formato de 24 horas (por ej., 13:00 en vez de 1:00 p.m.).

**Seleccionar formato de fecha** – Establece el formato para mostrar las fechas.

## < Accesibilidad >


Los ajustes de accesibilidad se usan para configurar cualquier complemento de accesibilidad que haya instalado en el teléfono.

**TalkBack** – Permite configurar la función TalkBack para proporcionar comandos verbales para asistir a personas con problemas de visión. Toque el botón  para activar la función. Toque **Ajustes** para configurar los ajustes de TalkBack.

**Tamaño de fuente** – Establece el tamaño de la fuente. Elija entre **Normal** y **Grande**.

## Configuración

**Zoom táctil** – Toque el botón  para alternar entre Encendido y Apagado. Activando esta función permite ampliar y reducir la pantalla tocándola tres veces.

**Notificaciones de mensaje/llamada de voz** – Toque el botón  para alternar entre Encendido y Apagado. Encendiendo la función le permite escuchar alertas automáticas habladas de llamadas y mensajes entrantes.

**Sombras de pantalla** – Seleccione esta opción para atenuar la luz de fondo de la pantalla.


**Atajo para Accesibilidad** – Toque el botón  para encender o apagar la función. Activando la función habilita las funciones de accesibilidad.

**Salida de síntesis de voz** – Establece el motor preferido y la velocidad para el síntesis de voz. La salida de síntesis de voz lee texto en voz alta, por ejemplo, el contenido de mensajes de texto y la identificación de llamadas entrantes.

**Tipo de sonido** – Permite establecer el tipo de audio. Elija entre **Mono** o **Estéreo**.

**Balance de sonido** – Envía el sonido hacia los canales derecho e izquierdo cuando se conecta un audífono. Para establecer manualmente la ruta del audio, mueva el botón deslizable en la barra deslizable lateral del audio.

**Desactivar todos los sonidos** – Marque la casilla de verificación para apagar todos los sonidos.


**Subtítulos** – Toque el botón  para alternar entre Encendido y Apagado. Encendiendo esta función personaliza los ajustes de los subtítulos para quienes tengan deficiencias auditivas. Establece el **Idioma**, **Tamaño de fuente**, y **Estilo de subtítulo**.

cited in *ATA the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley*  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

**Tiempo de respuesta táctil** – Establece los comentarios táctiles. Elija entre **Corto**, **Mediano**, o **Largo**.

**Touch assistant** – Toque el botón  para encender o apagar la función. Activando la función muestra un icono para acceder a acciones comunes rápidamente.


**Límite de tiempo de pantalla** – Establece el límite de tiempo de pantalla. Elija entre **30 seg**, **1 min**, **2 min**, **5 min**, **10 min**, **15 min** y **Mantener la pantalla encendida**.

**Zonas de control táctil** – Toque el botón  para alternar entre Encendido y Apagado. Encendiendo la función le permite seleccionar una área de la pantalla para limitar el control táctil. Presiona la **Tecla de Volumen Inferior** y toque la **Tecla Inicio** al mismo tiempo para activar y desactivar esta función.

**Pantalla giratoria** – Marque la casilla de verificación para permitir que el teléfono rote la pantalla dependiendo en la orientación física del teléfono (horizontal o vertical).

**Confirmación verbal de contraseña** – Marque la casilla de verificación para permitir confirmación en voz de los caracteres al introducir contraseñas.

**La tecla Encender/Apagar termina la llamada** – Marque la casilla de verificación para poder presionar la Tecla Encender/Bloquear para finalizar llamadas.

**Atajo de Ajustes de accesibilidad** – Establece un acceso sencillo y rápido a las funciones seleccionadas cuando se toca tres veces la **Tecla Inicio** . Elija entre los ajustes **Desactivar**, **Mostrar todos**, **TalkBack**, **Touch assistant** o **Ajustes de accesibilidad**.



## Configuración

**Entrada táctil** – Seleccione esta opción para activar la entrada de un toque. Permite que cada toque de los dedos ingrese una letra o carácter en el teclado de LG.

### < Impresión >

**Google Cloud Print** – Este menú le permite acceder a sus servicios de impresión a través de la nube.

### < Acerca del teléfono >

Este menú le permite administrar las actualizaciones del software y ver distinta información relacionada con su teléfono.

**Nombre del dispositivo** – Permite cambiar el nombre de su teléfono. Este será el nombre de su teléfono para Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, etc.

**Centro de actualización** – Vea actualizaciones para las aplicaciones y el software de parte de LG Electronics.

**Red** – Le permite ver su red, el tipo de red y la intensidad de la señal, el estado del servicio, el estado de roaming, el estado de la red móvil y la dirección IP.

**Estado** – Le permite ver su número de teléfono, IMEI, y IMEI SV.

**Batería** – Le permite ver el estado de la batería, el nivel de la batería y la información de uso de la batería.

**Información del hardware** – Le permite ver el número de modelo, el tiempo de actividad, la dirección MAC de Wi-Fi y la dirección Bluetooth.

**Información de Software** – Le permite ver la versión de Android, la versión de banda base, la versión de Kernel, el número de compilación y la versión del software.

Order in CTIA the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



**Información legal** – Le permite ver los acuerdos de derechos de las aplicaciones LG, las licencias de código abierto y la información legal de Google.

**Información de la patente** – Muestra la información de las patentes de LG.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

## Actualización del software del teléfono

### Actualice su teléfono inteligente sin una PC (FOTA)

Esta función le permite actualizar el software de su teléfono a una versión nueva con conveniencia a través de Firmware Over-the-Air (FOTA), sin tener que conectar a una PC con cable USB.

- 1 En la pantalla principal, toque  > etiqueta **Aplicaciones** (de ser necesario) > **Ajustes**  > **Acerca del teléfono** > **Centro de actualización** > **Actualización del Software**.
- 2 Seleccione la opción deseada.
  - **Actualizar ahora** – Permite comprobar si existe un software actualizado y realiza la actualización.
  - **Verificar la versión actual** – Permite verificar la versión actual de software de su teléfono.
  - **Última actualización** – Muestra la fecha de la última actualización de software.

#### NOTA:

- Después de completar la descarga, puede instalar el software inmediatamente o seleccionar otro momento para la instalación.
- Cada versión del software se actualiza de forma secuencial. Incluso después de completar la actualización, compruebe si hay una versión más reciente disponible.
- LG se reserva el derecho de poner a disposición las actualizaciones del firmware solo para modelos seleccionados según su propio criterio y no garantiza la disponibilidad de la versión más reciente del firmware para todos los modelos de teléfonos.

cited in CTIA the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141, archived on April 17, 2017

**Aviso: Software de código abierto**

Para obtener el código fuente bajo GPL, LGPL, MPL y otras licencias de código abierto que se contienen en este producto, visite <http://opensource.lge.com>.

Además del código fuente, todos los términos, las exclusiones de garantía y los avisos de derechos de autor a los que se hace referencia están disponibles para descargar.

LG Electronics también le proporcionará el código fuente abierto en un CD-ROM con un cargo que cubra el costo de realizar tal distribución (como el costo de los medios, el envío y el manejo), previa solicitud por correo electrónico a [opensource@lge.com](mailto:opensource@lge.com). Esta oferta es válida durante tres (3) años a partir de la fecha en la que compra el producto.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

# Accesorios

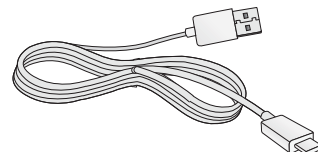
Estos accesorios están disponibles para usarlos con su teléfono. **(los elementos descritos podrían ser opcionales y venderse por separado).**

**Adaptador de carga**



**Cable USB**

Conecta su teléfono y la PC.



**Batería**



**Guía del usuario**

Información adicional sobre el teléfono.




*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley No. 16-15141 archived on April 07, 2017*

**NOTA:**



- Utilice siempre accesorios LG originales. Si no lo hace, la garantía puede quedar anulada.
- Los accesorios pueden variar en las distintas regiones.

## Preguntas frecuentes



Antes de llevar el teléfono a reparación o llamar a un representante del servicio técnico, compruebe si alguno de los problemas que presenta el teléfono se describe en esta sección.

Categoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
Subcategoría		
<b>Bluetooth</b> Dispositivos Bluetooth	¿Cuáles son las funciones disponibles mediante Bluetooth?	Puede conectar un dispositivo de audio Bluetooth como unos auriculares Estéreo/Mono o kit para el automóvil. También puede conectar con dispositivos Bluetooth compatibles para usar las aplicaciones Galería y Contactos y así compartir imágenes, videos, contactos, etc. Asimismo, cuando haya un servidor FTP conectado a un dispositivo compatible, puede compartir el contenido almacenado en la memoria del teléfono o en la tarjeta microSD.
<b>Datos</b> Copia de seguridad de contactos	¿Cómo puedo hacer una copia de seguridad de los contactos?	Los datos de los contactos se pueden sincronizar entre el teléfono y Gmail™.
<b>Datos</b> Sincronización	¿Se puede configurar una sincronización en una sola dirección con Gmail?	Sólo está disponible la sincronización de dos direcciones.
<b>Datos</b> Sincronización	¿Se pueden sincronizar todas las carpetas de correo electrónico?	El buzón de entrada se sincroniza automáticamente. Puede ver otras carpetas al tocar el icono <b>Menú</b>  y luego tocar <b>Carpetas</b> para elegir una carpeta distinta.
<b>Servicio de Google™</b> Inicio de sesión en Gmail	¿Debo iniciar sesión en Gmail cada vez que desee acceder a Gmail?	Una vez que inicie sesión en Gmail, no necesita volver a hacerlo.







## Preguntas frecuentes

Categoría Subcategoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
<b>Servicio de Google</b> Cuenta de Google	¿Se pueden filtrar los correos electrónicos?	No. El teléfono no admite el filtro de correos electrónicos.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> YouTube™	¿Se pueden reproducir videos de YouTube?	Sí. El teléfono admite los videos de YouTube, pero se deben mirar utilizando la aplicación YouTube (y no a través de la aplicación Chrome).
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Correo electrónico	¿Qué sucede si ejecuto otra aplicación mientras escribo un correo electrónico?	Su correo electrónico se guardará como borrador automáticamente.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Tono de timbre	¿Hay algún límite para el tamaño de archivo si quiero usar un archivo MP3 como tono de timbre?	No hay límites para el tamaño de archivo.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Recibir mensajes	Mi teléfono ha dejado de recibir mensajes. ¿Cómo puedo solucionar esto?	<p>Su teléfono no puede recibir nuevos mensajes cuando hay menos de 10 MB de espacio disponible en la memoria del teléfono. Revise la memoria del teléfono y elimine algunos datos (como mensajes, imágenes o aplicaciones descargadas) para liberar espacio.</p> <p><b>Para revisar la memoria del teléfono:</b> En la pantalla principal, toque  &gt; etiqueta <b>Aplicaciones</b> (de ser necesario) &gt; <b>Ajustes</b>  &gt; <b>Almacenamiento</b>.</p>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Hora del mensaje	Mi teléfono no muestra la hora de los mensajes que se recibieron hace más de 24 horas. ¿Cómo puedo cambiar esto?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Abra la secuencia que contiene el mensaje que desea revisar.</li> <li>2. Toque y mantenga presionado el mensaje. Toque <b>Detalles</b> en el menú contextual que aparece.</li> </ol>

cited in *CTIA - The Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley*  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017





Categoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
Subcategoría		
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Tarjeta microSD	¿Cuál es el tamaño máximo que admite una tarjeta de memoria?	Las tarjetas de memoria de 32 GB son compatibles.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Navegación	¿Es posible instalar otra aplicación de navegación en mi teléfono?	Se puede instalar y usar cualquier aplicación que esté disponible en Google Play y que sea compatible con el hardware.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Sincronización	¿Puedo sincronizar mis contactos desde todas mis cuentas de correo electrónico?	Se pueden sincronizar solo los contactos de Gmail y MS Exchange Server (servidor de correos electrónicos de la empresa).
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Esperar y Pausar	¿Es posible guardar un contacto con las funciones Esperar y Pausar en los números?	<p>Si llegara a transferir un contacto con las funciones Esperar y Pausa habilitadas en el número, no podrá usar dichas funciones. Deberá guardar nuevamente cada número.</p> <p><b>Cómo guardar con Esperar y Pausar:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desde la pantalla principal, toque la <b>Tecla Teléfono</b> .</li> <li>Introduzca el número y luego toque el icono <b>Menú</b> .</li> <li>Toque <b>Agregar pausa de 2 seg.</b> o <b>Agregar espera.</b></li> </ol>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Seguridad	¿Cuáles son las funciones de seguridad del teléfono?	Puede configurar el teléfono para que solicite la entrada de un patrón de bloqueo de pantalla (Patrón, PIN, Contraseña) antes de poder acceder al teléfono o usarlo.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Patrón de desbloqueo	¿Qué debo hacer si olvido mi patrón de desbloqueo?	Después de cinco intentos sin éxito, puede tocar <b>¿Ha olvidado el patrón?</b> en la parte inferior de la pantalla y usar la información de tu cuenta de Google o PIN de respaldo para desbloquear su teléfono.

## Preguntas frecuentes



Categoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
Subcategoría		
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Patrón de desbloqueo	¿Cómo puedo crear un patrón de desbloqueo?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desde la pantalla principal, toque  &gt; etiqueta <b>Aplicaciones</b> (de ser necesario) &gt; <b>Ajustes</b> .</li> <li>Toque <b>Bloqueo de pantalla</b> &gt; <b>Seleccionar bloqueo de pantalla</b> &gt; <b>Patrón</b>. La primera vez que lo haga, se mostrará un breve tutorial sobre la creación de un patrón.</li> <li>Configúrelo dibujando el patrón una vez, y luego repítalo para confirmarlo.</li> </ol>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Memoria	¿Sabré cuando la memoria esté llena?	Sí. Recibirá una notificación.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Idiomas compatibles	¿Se puede cambiar el idioma?	<p>El teléfono incluye recursos bilingües.</p> <p><b>Para cambiar el idioma:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Desde la pantalla principal, toque  y toque <b>Ajustes</b> .</li> <li>Toque <b>Idioma y teclado</b> &gt; <b>Idioma</b>.</li> <li>Toque el idioma deseado.</li> </ol>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> VPN	¿Cómo configuro una VPN?	La configuración de acceso a una VPN varía según cada empresa. Para configurar el acceso a una VPN en el teléfono, deberá contactar al administrador de red de su empresa para obtener detalles.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Tiempo de espera de la pantalla	Mi pantalla se apaga después de 15 segundos. ¿Cómo puedo cambiar el tiempo de apagado de la luz de fondo?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>En la pantalla principal, toque la toque  &gt; etiqueta <b>Aplicaciones</b> (de ser necesario) &gt; <b>Ajustes</b>  &gt; <b>Pantalla</b> &gt; <b>Límite de tiempo de pantalla</b>.</li> <li>Toque el tiempo de espera de la luz de fondo de la pantalla que desea utilizar.</li> </ol>

City of Berkeley  
 Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
 cited in OTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
 No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017



Categoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
Subcategoría		
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Tonos táctiles sonoros	Cuando marco un número, el teléfono reproduce tonos. ¿Cómo la desactivo?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. En la pantalla principal, toque  &gt; etiqueta <b>Aplicaciones</b> (de ser necesario) &gt; <b>Ajustes</b>  &gt; <b>Sonido</b> &gt; <b>Efectos de sonido</b>.</li> <li>2. Toque <b>Teclado numérico con sonido</b> para eliminar la marca de verificación y deshabilitar la función.</li> </ol>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Wi-Fi y 3G	¿Qué servicio utilizará mi teléfono si Wi-Fi y 3G están disponibles?	<p>Cuando utilice datos, es posible que el teléfono use la conexión Wi-Fi en forma predeterminada (si la conectividad Wi-Fi está activada en el teléfono). No obstante, no recibirá ninguna notificación cuando el teléfono pase de una conexión a otra.</p> <p>Para saber qué conexión de datos se está utilizando, vea el icono de 3G o Wi-Fi que se encuentra en la parte superior de la pantalla.</p>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Pantalla principal	¿Se puede quitar una aplicación de la pantalla principal?	<p>Sí. Toque y mantenga presionado el icono hasta que aparezca el icono de papelera en la parte superior de la pantalla. A continuación, sin levantar el dedo, arrastre el icono hasta la papelera y levante el dedo.</p>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Aplicación	Descargué una aplicación y ocasiona muchos errores. ¿Cómo la quito?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. En la pantalla principal, toque la toque  &gt; etiqueta <b>Aplicaciones</b> (de ser necesario) &gt; <b>Ajustes</b>  &gt; <b>Aplicaciones</b>.</li> <li>2. Desplácese hasta la etiqueta <b>DESCARGADAS</b> y luego toque la aplicación para desinstalarla.</li> <li>3. Toque <b>Desinstalar</b> y luego <b>OK</b> para confirmar.</li> </ol>
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Cargador	¿Es posible cargar mi teléfono mediante el cable USB sin instalar el controlador USB requerido?	<p>Sí, el cable USB permitirá cargar la batería desde el PC, tanto si los controladores necesarios se han instalado en la computadora como si no.</p>

## Preguntas frecuentes

Categoría Subcategoría	Pregunta	Respuesta
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Tonos de timbre	¿Puedo usar archivos de música como tono de timbre?	Sí. Después de guardar un archivo de música, lo puede usar como tono de timbre. Mantenga presionada una canción en una lista de biblioteca. Toque <b>Fijar como tono de timbre</b> en el menú contextual que aparece.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Alarma	Si apago el teléfono, ¿la alarma suena o no?	No.
<b>Función del teléfono</b> Alarma	Si se establece el volumen del timbre en Desactivado o Vibrar, ¿se escuchará la alarma?	En la etiqueta <b>Alarma</b> de la aplicación <b>Reloj</b> , toque el icono <b>Menú</b>  > <b>Ajustes</b> . Marque la opción <b>Alarma en modo silencioso</b> .
<b>Especificaciones del teléfono</b> Banda	¿Cuáles son las bandas inalámbricas que admite el teléfono?	Su teléfono puede funcionar en las bandas GSM (850MHz, 900MHz, 1800MHz, 1900MHz), UMTS (850MHz, 1900MHz).
<b>Solución de recuperación</b> Restablecimiento a los valores de fábrica	¿Cómo realizo un restablecimiento a los valores de fábrica?	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. En la pantalla principal, toque el icono <b>Menú</b>  &gt; <b>Copia de respaldo y restauración</b> &gt; <b>Restaurar datos de fábrica</b>.</li> <li>2. Lea la advertencia y toque <b>Restaurar teléfono</b>.</li> <li>3. Toque <b>Borrar todo</b> y <b>OK</b> para confirmar.</li> </ol> <p><b>Atención:</b> <b>Si realiza un reinicio a los valores de fábrica, se borrarán todas las aplicaciones instaladas y los datos de usuario. Antes de realizar ese tipo de restablecimiento, recuerde que debe hacer una copia de respaldo de todos los datos que sean importantes.</b></p>

## Para su seguridad

El valor más elevado de la SAR para este modelo de teléfono cuando se lo probó para usarse en el oído es de 1.08 W/Kg (1g) y cuando se lo usa sobre el cuerpo, según lo descrito en esta guía del usuario, es de 0.95 W/Kg (1g) (las mediciones del uso en el cuerpo varían en función de los modelos de los teléfonos y dependen de los accesorios disponibles y los requisitos de la FCC).

Aun cuando puede haber diferencias entre los niveles de SAR de varios teléfonos y en varias posiciones, todos ellos cumplen el requisito gubernamental para una exposición segura.

La FCC ha otorgado una Autorización de equipo para este modelo de teléfono con todos los niveles de SAR reportados y evaluados en cumplimiento de los lineamientos de emisión de RF de la FCC. La información de la SAR sobre este modelo de teléfono está archivada en la FCC y puede encontrarse en la sección Display Grant de <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/> después de buscar FCC ID ZNFL15G.

- Para reducir el riesgo de incendios o quemaduras, no exponga el dispositivo a una temperatura mayor que 50°C (122°F) ni deseche en fuego o agua.
- Para reducir el riesgo de incendios o quemaduras, no deseche el dispositivo en fuego o agua.
- No desarme, abra, aplaste, doble, deforme, perforo ni raye el teléfono.
- Existe peligro de explosión si se reemplaza la batería en forma inadecuada. Para reducir el riesgo de incendios o quemaduras, no desarme, aplaste, perforo, cause cortocircuito a los contactos externos, exponga a una temperatura mayor que 50°C (122°F) o deseche en fuego o agua. Mantenga este producto alejado de la humedad excesiva y de temperaturas extremas. Mantenga la batería o

## Para su seguridad

el dispositivo secos y alejados del agua o cualquier líquido, dado que puede ocasionar un cortocircuito.

- Evite usar el teléfono cerca de fuentes electromagnéticas intensas como hornos microondas, altoparlantes, televisores y radios.
- Use solo accesorios originales aprobados por el fabricante o accesorios que no contengan metales. Utilice solamente accesorios de carga aprobados para cargar el teléfono LG. La manipulación inadecuada del puerto de carga/ accesorio y el uso de un cargador no compatible pueden ocasionarle daños al teléfono y anular la garantía.
- Use sólo el cargador de batería aprobado. De lo contrario, podría ocasionar un daño grave en su teléfono.

## Reglamentaciones de compatibilidad con audífonos (HAC) para dispositivos inalámbricos

El 10 de julio de 2003, el informe y orden de la Comisión Federal de Comunicaciones (FCC) de los EE. UU. en el expediente sobre comunicaciones inalámbricas 01-309 modificó la excepción de los teléfonos inalámbricos en virtud de la Ley de Compatibilidad con Audífonos (Ley HAC, por su sigla en inglés) de 1988 para exigir que los teléfonos inalámbricos digitales sean compatibles con los audífonos. La intención de la Ley HAC es garantizar que las personas con discapacidades auditivas puedan acceder en forma razonable a los servicios de telecomunicaciones.

Al usar ciertos teléfonos inalámbricos cerca de algunos dispositivos auditivos (audífonos e implantes cocleares), es posible que los usuarios detecten un ruido

de zumbido, murmullo o chirrido. Algunos dispositivos para la audición son más inmunes que otros a este ruido de interferencia, y los teléfonos también varían en la cantidad de interferencia que generan.

La industria de los teléfonos inalámbricos ha desarrollado un sistema de clasificación de teléfonos inalámbricos con el fin de ayudar a los usuarios de dispositivos auditivos a encontrar teléfonos que puedan ser compatibles con sus dispositivos auditivos. No se han clasificado todos los teléfonos. Los teléfonos clasificados incluyen la clasificación en su caja o llevan una etiqueta en la caja. Las clasificaciones no son garantías. Los resultados variarán en función del dispositivo

auditivo del usuario y su pérdida de audición. Si su dispositivo auditivo resultara ser vulnerable a la interferencia, es posible que no pueda usar satisfactoriamente un teléfono clasificado. Probar el teléfono con su dispositivo auditivo es la mejor forma de evaluarlo para sus necesidades personales.

**Clasificaciones M:** los teléfonos con clasificación M3 o M4 cumplen los requisitos de la FCC y probablemente generen menos interferencia con los dispositivos auditivos que los teléfonos no etiquetados. M4 la mejor o más alta de las dos clasificaciones.

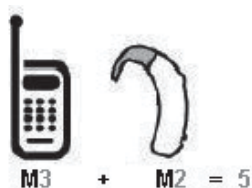
**Clasificaciones T:** Los teléfonos clasificados como T3 o T4 cumplen con los requisitos de la FCC y es probable que generen menos interferencia a los dispositivos para la audición que los teléfonos que no están etiquetados. T4 la mejor o más alta de las dos clasificaciones.

Los dispositivos auditivos también pueden tener una clasificación. El fabricante del dispositivo auditivo o un otorrinolaringólogo pueden ayudarlo a encontrar esta

## Para su seguridad

clasificación. Las clasificaciones más altas significan que el dispositivo auditivo es relativamente inmune al ruido de interferencia.

Los valores de clasificación del audífono y del teléfono inalámbrico se suman. Una suma de 5 se considera aceptable para el uso normal. Una suma de 6 se considera que corresponde a un uso óptimo.



En el ejemplo de la izquierda, si un audífono cumple con la clasificación de nivel M2 y el teléfono inalámbrico cumple con la clasificación de nivel M3, la suma de los dos valores es igual a M5.

Esto debería proporcionarle al usuario del audífono un “uso normal” mientras usa su audífono con ese teléfono inalámbrico en particular. En este contexto, “uso normal” se define como una calidad de señal que es aceptable para la operación normal.

La marca M es sinónimo de la marca U. La marca T es sinónimo de la marca UT. La Alianza para Soluciones de la Industria de las Telecomunicaciones (ATIS, por su siglas en inglés) recomienda las marcas M y T. La sección 20.19 de las reglas de la FCC hace referencia a las marcas U y UT. El procedimiento de clasificación y medición de la HAC se encuentra descrito en el estándar C63.19 del Instituto de Estándares Nacionales de los EE. UU. (ANSI, por su sigla en inglés). Para asegurarse de que se mantenga la clasificación de Compatibilidad con aparatos para la audición, durante las llamadas deben deshabilitarse los transmisores secundarios como son los componentes Bluetooth y WLAN.

Al hablar por un teléfono celular, se recomienda apagar el modo BT (Bluetooth) o WLAN para HAC.

**Información sobre audífonos y teléfonos inalámbricos digitales****Accesibilidad de prótesis auditivas y teléfonos móviles**

<http://www.accesswireless.org/>

**Gallaudet University, RERC**

<http://tap.gallaudet.edu/Voice/>

**Compatibilidad de prótesis auditivas y control de volume de la FCC**

<http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/dro/hearing.html>

**Orden de compatibilidad de prótesis auditivas de la FCC**

[http://hraunfoss.fcc.gov/edocs\\_public/attachmatch/FCC-03-168A1.pdf](http://hraunfoss.fcc.gov/edocs_public/attachmatch/FCC-03-168A1.pdf)

**Hearing Loss Association of America [HLAA]**

<http://hearingloss.org/content/telephonesand-mobile-devices>

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*



## Para su seguridad

### 7.11 Legislación sobre la garantía

Las leyes siguientes rigen las garantías que surgen en virtud de las ventas minorista de productos para el consumidor:

- Ley Song-Beverly de Garantía del Consumidor de California [CC, Sección 1790 y siguientes]
- El Código Uniforme de Comercio de California, División Dos [Cód. de Comercio, Sección 2101 y siguientes], y
- La Ley Federal Magnuson-Moss de Mejoramiento de las Garantías de la Comisión Federal de Comercio [Título 15 del Cód. de los Estados Unidos (USC), Sección 2301 y siguientes; Título 16 del Código de Reglamentos Federales (CFR) partes 701 a 703]. Una garantía típica de la Ley Magnuson-Moss es una promesa escrita de que el producto no presenta defectos o una promesa escrita de devolver el dinero, reparar o reemplazar los productos defectuosos. [Ver el Título 15 del Cód. de los Estados Unidos, Sección 2301(6)]. Entre los resarcimientos se incluyen los daños y perjuicios por incumplir con una garantía escrita o un contrato de servicios o por violar las disposiciones sobre divulgación. [Ver el Título 15 del Cód. de los Estados Unidos, Sección 2310(d)]. Con excepción de determinados requisitos respecto de divulgación y difamación, la ley federal no prevalece sobre la ley estatal. [Ver el Título 15 del Cód. de los Estados Unidos, Sección 2311].



La Ley de Garantía del Consumidor no afecta los derechos y las obligaciones de las partes en virtud del Código Uniforme de Comercio, con la excepción de que las disposiciones de la Ley prevalecen sobre las disposiciones del Código de Comercio en caso de surgir un conflicto. [CC §1790.3.]

A los fines de demandas de menor cuantía, este curso se enfocará en los derechos y obligaciones en virtud de las leyes estatales.

*cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017*

cited in CTIA-the Wireless Ass'n v. City of Berkeley  
No. 16-15141 archived on April 17, 2017

## United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit

Office of the Clerk  
95 Seventh Street  
San Francisco, CA 94103

### Information Regarding Judgment and Post-Judgment Proceedings

#### Judgment

- This Court has filed and entered the attached judgment in your case. Fed. R. App. P. 36. Please note the filed date on the attached decision because all of the dates described below run from that date, not from the date you receive this notice.

#### Mandate (Fed. R. App. P. 41; 9th Cir. R. 41-1 & -2)

- The mandate will issue 7 days after the expiration of the time for filing a petition for rehearing or 7 days from the denial of a petition for rehearing, unless the Court directs otherwise. To file a motion to stay the mandate, file it electronically via the appellate ECF system or, if you are a pro se litigant or an attorney with an exemption from using appellate ECF, file one original motion on paper.

#### Petition for Panel Rehearing (Fed. R. App. P. 40; 9th Cir. R. 40-1)

#### Petition for Rehearing En Banc (Fed. R. App. P. 35; 9th Cir. R. 35-1 to -3)

#### (1) A. Purpose (Panel Rehearing):

- A party should seek panel rehearing only if one or more of the following grounds exist:
  - ▶ A material point of fact or law was overlooked in the decision;
  - ▶ A change in the law occurred after the case was submitted which appears to have been overlooked by the panel; or
  - ▶ An apparent conflict with another decision of the Court was not addressed in the opinion.
- Do not file a petition for panel rehearing merely to reargue the case.

#### B. Purpose (Rehearing En Banc)

- A party should seek en banc rehearing only if one or more of the following grounds exist:

- ▶ Consideration by the full Court is necessary to secure or maintain uniformity of the Court's decisions; or
- ▶ The proceeding involves a question of exceptional importance; or
- ▶ The opinion directly conflicts with an existing opinion by another court of appeals or the Supreme Court and substantially affects a rule of national application in which there is an overriding need for national uniformity.

**(2) Deadlines for Filing:**

- A petition for rehearing may be filed within 14 days after entry of judgment. Fed. R. App. P. 40(a)(1).
- If the United States or an agency or officer thereof is a party in a civil case, the time for filing a petition for rehearing is 45 days after entry of judgment. Fed. R. App. P. 40(a)(1).
- If the mandate has issued, the petition for rehearing should be accompanied by a motion to recall the mandate.
- *See* Advisory Note to 9th Cir. R. 40-1 (petitions must be received on the due date).
- An order to publish a previously unpublished memorandum disposition extends the time to file a petition for rehearing to 14 days after the date of the order of publication or, in all civil cases in which the United States or an agency or officer thereof is a party, 45 days after the date of the order of publication. 9th Cir. R. 40-2.

**(3) Statement of Counsel**

- A petition should contain an introduction stating that, in counsel's judgment, one or more of the situations described in the "purpose" section above exist. The points to be raised must be stated clearly.

**(4) Form & Number of Copies (9th Cir. R. 40-1; Fed. R. App. P. 32(c)(2))**

- The petition shall not exceed 15 pages unless it complies with the alternative length limitations of 4,200 words or 390 lines of text.
- The petition must be accompanied by a copy of the panel's decision being challenged.
- An answer, when ordered by the Court, shall comply with the same length limitations as the petition.
- If a pro se litigant elects to file a form brief pursuant to Circuit Rule 28-1, a petition for panel rehearing or for rehearing en banc need not comply with Fed. R. App. P. 32.

Case: 16-15141, 04/21/2017, ID: 10405452, DktEntry: 92-3, Page 3 of 5

- The petition or answer must be accompanied by a Certificate of Compliance found at Form 11, available on our website at [www.ca9.uscourts.gov](http://www.ca9.uscourts.gov) under *Forms*.
- You may file a petition electronically via the appellate ECF system. No paper copies are required unless the Court orders otherwise. If you are a pro se litigant or an attorney exempted from using the appellate ECF system, file one original petition on paper. No additional paper copies are required unless the Court orders otherwise.

### **Bill of Costs (Fed. R. App. P. 39, 9th Cir. R. 39-1)**

- The Bill of Costs must be filed within 14 days after entry of judgment.
- See Form 10 for additional information, available on our website at [www.ca9.uscourts.gov](http://www.ca9.uscourts.gov) under *Forms*.

### **Attorneys Fees**

- Ninth Circuit Rule 39-1 describes the content and due dates for attorneys fees applications.
- All relevant forms are available on our website at [www.ca9.uscourts.gov](http://www.ca9.uscourts.gov) under *Forms* or by telephoning (415) 355-7806.

### **Petition for a Writ of Certiorari**

- Please refer to the Rules of the United States Supreme Court at [www.supremecourt.gov](http://www.supremecourt.gov)

### **Counsel Listing in Published Opinions**

- Please check counsel listing on the attached decision.
- If there are any errors in a published opinion, please send a letter **in writing within 10 days** to:
  - ▶ Thomson Reuters; 610 Opperman Drive; PO Box 64526; St. Paul, MN 55164-0526 (Attn: Jean Green, Senior Publications Coordinator);
  - ▶ and electronically file a copy of the letter via the appellate ECF system by using “File Correspondence to Court,” or if you are an attorney exempted from using the appellate ECF system, mail the Court one copy of the letter.

### United States Court of Appeals for the Ninth Circuit

### BILL OF COSTS

This form is available as a fillable version at:

<http://cdn.ca9.uscourts.gov/datastore/uploads/forms/Form%2010%20-%20Bill%20of%20Costs.pdf>.

**Note:** If you wish to file a bill of costs, it MUST be submitted on this form and filed, with the clerk, with proof of service, within 14 days of the date of entry of judgment, and in accordance with 9th Circuit Rule 39-1. A late bill of costs must be accompanied by a motion showing good cause. Please refer to FRAP 39, 28 U.S.C. § 1920, and 9th Circuit Rule 39-1 when preparing your bill of costs.

v.  9th Cir. No.

The Clerk is requested to tax the following costs against:

Cost Taxable under FRAP 39, 28 U.S.C. § 1920, 9th Cir. R. 39-1	REQUESTED <i>(Each Column Must Be Completed)</i>				ALLOWED <i>(To Be Completed by the Clerk)</i>			
	No. of Docs.	Pages per Doc.	Cost per Page*	TOTAL COST	No. of Docs.	Pages per Doc.	Cost per Page*	TOTAL COST
Excerpt of Record	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>
Opening Brief	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>
Answering Brief	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>
Reply Brief	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>
Other**	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>	\$ <input type="text"/>
<b>TOTAL:</b>				\$ <input type="text"/>	<b>TOTAL:</b> \$ <input type="text"/>			

\* *Costs per page:* May not exceed .10 or actual cost, whichever is less. 9th Circuit Rule 39-1.

\*\* *Other:* Any other requests must be accompanied by a statement explaining why the item(s) should be taxed pursuant to 9th Circuit Rule 39-1. Additional items without such supporting statements will not be considered.

Attorneys' fees **cannot** be requested on this form.

*Continue to next page*

**Form 10. Bill of Costs - Continued**

I, , swear under penalty of perjury that the services for which costs are taxed were actually and necessarily performed, and that the requested costs were actually expended as listed.

Signature

("s/" plus attorney's name if submitted electronically)

Date

Name of Counsel:

Attorney for:

*(To Be Completed by the Clerk)*

Date

Costs are taxed in the amount of \$

Clerk of Court

By: , Deputy Clerk